ASTRA

Owner's Manual

Contents

Introduction 2
In brief 6
Keys, doors and windows 21
Seats, restraints 47
Storage 72
Instruments and controls 91
Lighting 135
Climate control 146
Driving and operating 156
Vehicle care 229
Service and maintenance 278
Technical data 282
Customer information 298
Index 310

Introduction

Fuel	Designation			
Engine oil	Grade			
	Viscosity			
Tyre pressure		Tyre size	Front	Rear
	Summer tyres			
	Winter tyres			
Weights				
	Gross vehicle weight rating			
	- Kerb weight, basic model			
	= Loading			

Vehicle specific data

Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible. This information is available in the sections "Service and maintenance" and "Technical data" as well as on the identification plate.

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

Disregarding the description given in this manual may affect your warranty.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Opel Service Partner.

For gas vehicles we recommend an Opel Repairer authorised for servicing gas vehicles.

All Opel Service Partners provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Opel work according to specific Opel instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

Using this manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the engine identifier code. The corresponding sales designation and engineering code can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- Displays may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

Danger, Warnings and Cautions

⚠Danger

Text marked ⚠**Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠Warning

Text marked ⚠**Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨. ⇨ means "see page".

Page references and index entries refer to the indented headings given in the section table of content.

Chronological order to select menu entries in the vehicle personalisation is indicated with ➧.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

Your Opel Team

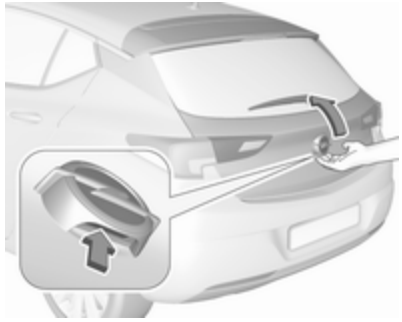
In brief

Initial drive information

Vehicle unlocking

Press 🔓 to unlock the doors and load compartment. Open the doors by pulling the handles.

Tailgate



5-door Hatchback: to open the tailgate, push the touchpad switch below the brand emblem.

Sports Tourer: to open the tailgate, push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding.

Radio remote control ⇨ 22.

Central locking system ⇨ 25.

Electronic key system ⇨ 23.

Load compartment ⇨ 31.

Seat adjustment

Longitudinal adjustment

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Seat position ⇨ 48.

Manual seat adjustment ⇨ 49.

Power seat adjustment ⇨ 51.

Backrests inclination

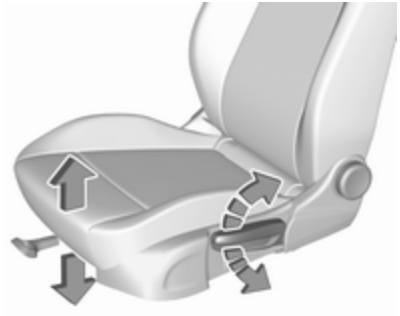
Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat position ⇨ 48.

Manual seat adjustment ⇨ 49.

Power seat adjustment ⇨ 51.

Seat height



Lever pumping motion

up : seat higher
down : seat lower

Seat position ⇨ 48.

Manual seat adjustment ⇨ 49.

Power seat adjustment ⇨ 51.

Seat inclination

Press switch

top : front end higher
bottom : front end lower

Seat position ⇨ 48.

Manual seat adjustment ⇨ 49.

Power seat adjustment ⇨ 51.

Head restraint adjustment

Press release button, adjust height, engage.

Head restraints ⇨ 47.

Seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and fasten in belt buckle. The seat belt must not be twisted and must fit close against the body. The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approx. 25°).

To unfasten belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Seat position ⇨ 48, Seat belts ⇨ 57, Airbag system ⇨ 59.

Mirror adjustment

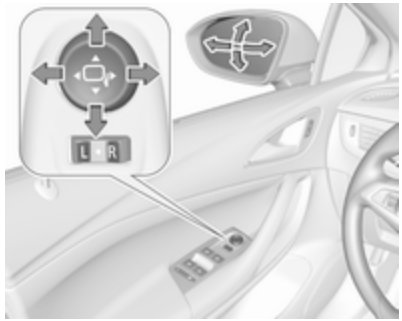
Interior mirror

To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇨ 41.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇨ 42.

Exterior mirrors

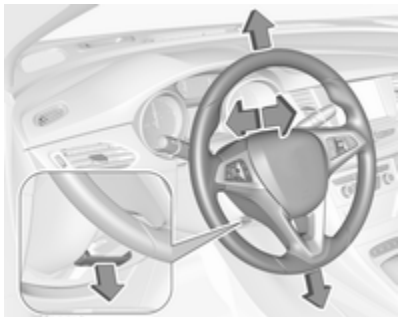


Select the relevant exterior mirror by switching the rocker control to left mirror **(L)** or right mirror **(R)**. Adjust respective mirror by the four-way control.

Convex exterior mirrors ⇨ 40, Electric adjustment ⇨ 40, Folding exterior mirrors ⇨ 40.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 41.

Steering wheel adjustment

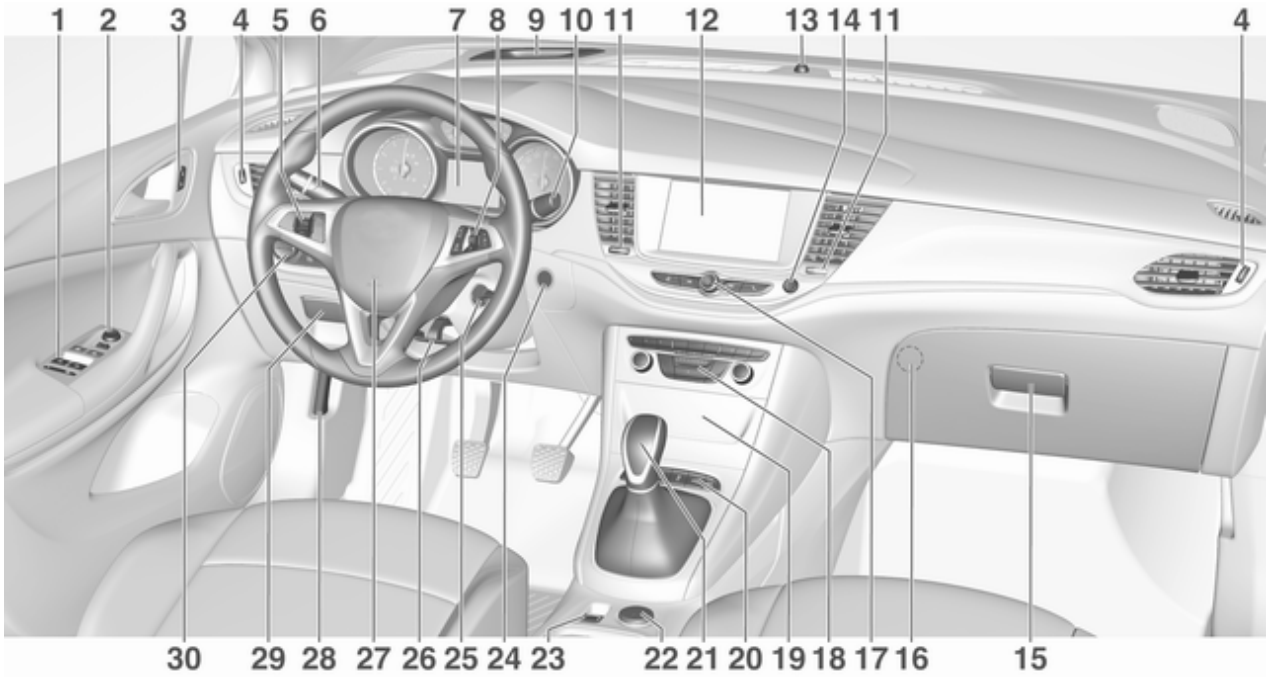


Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

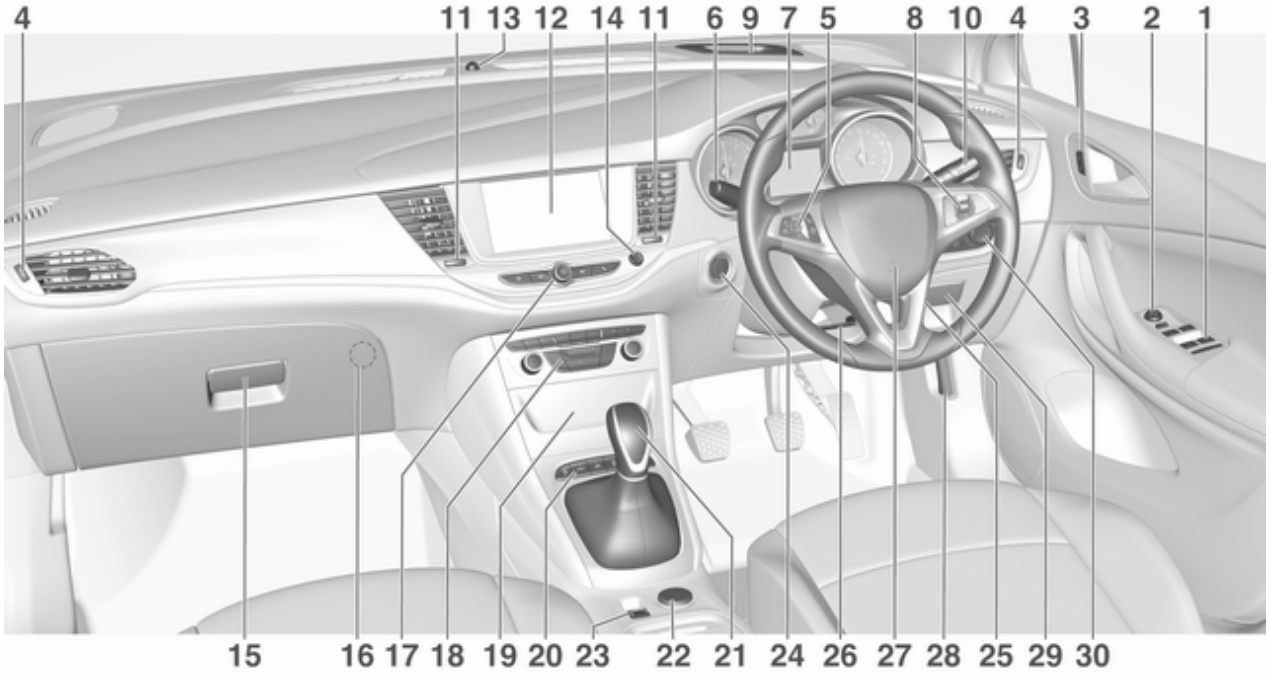
Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Airbag system ⇨ 59, Ignition positions ⇨ 157.

Instrument panel overview



1 Power windows 42
2 Exterior mirrors 40
3 Central locking system 25
4 Side air vents 154
5 Cruise control 184
Speed limiter 186
Adaptive cruise control 187
Forward collision alert 195
6 Turn and lane-change signals, headlight flash, low/high beam, high beam assist 141
Exit lighting 144
Parking lights 142
Buttons for Driver Information Centre 115
7 Instruments 103
Driver Information Centre 115
8 Buttons for Driver Information Centre 115
9 Forward collision alert indicator 195
10 Windscreen wiper and washer, rear wiper and washer 93
11 Centre air vents 154
12 Info Display 121
13 Anti-theft alarm system status LED 37
14 Hazard warning flashers 140
15 Glovebox 72
16 CD player
17 Controls for Info Display operation 121
18 Climate control system 147
19 Fuse box 250
20 Traction Control system 181
Electronic Stability Control . 182
Sport mode 183
Parking assist / Advanced parking assist 201
Lane keep assist 216
Eco button for stop-start system 162
Fuel selector 105
21 Manual transmission 174
Automatic transmission 171
Manual transmission automated 175
22 Power outlet 98
23 Parking brake 179
24 Power button 158
25 Ignition switch 157
26 Steering wheel adjustment . . 92
27 Horn 93
28 Bonnet release lever 231
29 Storage compartment 73
30 Light switch 135
Headlight range adjustment 136
Front/rear fog lights 141
Instrument illumination 143


4
11
13
12
14
11
6
9
7
5
8
10
4
3
2
1
15
16
17
18
19
20
23
22
21
24
26
27
28
25
29
30

Exterior lighting

AUTO : automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight
: sidelights
: headlights

Automatic light control ⇨ 136.

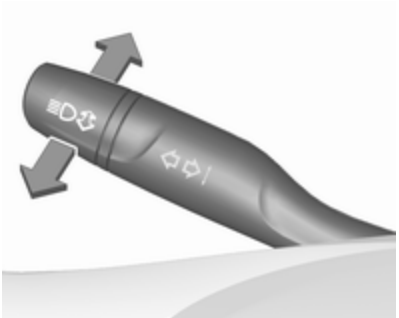
Fog lights

Press button in light switch:

: front fog lights

: rear fog light

Headlight flash, high beam and low beam



headlight flash : pull lever
high beam : push lever
low beam : push or pull lever

High beam ⇨ 136.

Headlight flash ⇨ 136.

LED headlights ⇨ 137.

High beam assist ⇨ 137.

Turn and lane-change signals

lever up : right turn signal
lever down : left turn signal

Turn and lane-change signals ⇨ 141, Parking lights ⇨ 142.

Hazard warning flashers

Operated by pressing ⚠.

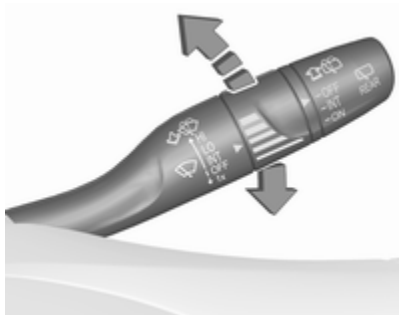
Hazard warning flashers ⇨ 140.

Horn

Press 📯.

Washer and wiper systems

Windscreen wiper

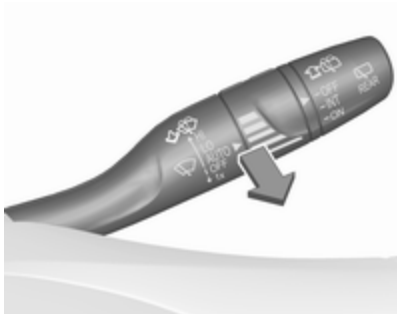


HI : fast
LO : slow
INT : interval wiping
or
automatic wiping with rain sensor
OFF : off

For single wipe when the wiper is off, press lever down to position **1x**.

Windscreen wiper ⇨ 93.

Windscreen washer



Pull lever.

Windscreen washer system ⇨ 93, Washer fluid ⇨ 234, Wiper blade replacement ⇨ 236.

Rear window wiper

Turn outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

OFF : off
INT : intermittent operation
ON : continuous operation

Rear window washer

Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed on the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Rear window wiper/washer ⇨ 95.

Climate control

Heated rear window

The heating is operated by pressing ⊞.

Heated rear window ⇨ 44.

Heated exterior mirrors

Pressing ⊞ also activates the heated exterior mirrors.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 41.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Press ⊞: the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window ⊞.
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Heating and ventilation system ⇨ 146.

Air conditioning system ⇨ 147.

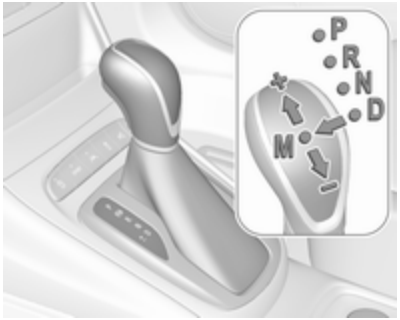
Transmission

Manual transmission

Reverse: with the vehicle stationary, depress clutch pedal and press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

Manual transmission ⇨ 174.

Automatic transmission

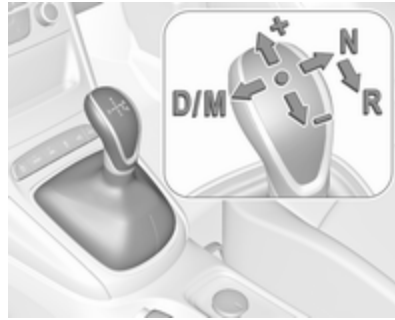


P : park position
R : reverse
N : neutral mode
D : automatic mode
M : manual mode
+ : upshift
– : downshift

The selector lever can only be moved out of **P** when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied. To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

Automatic transmission ⇨ 171.

Manual transmission automated



N : neutral position
D : automatic mode
M : manual mode
+ : upshift
– : downshift
R : reverse

Engage reverse only when vehicle is stationary.

Manual transmission automated ⇨ 175.

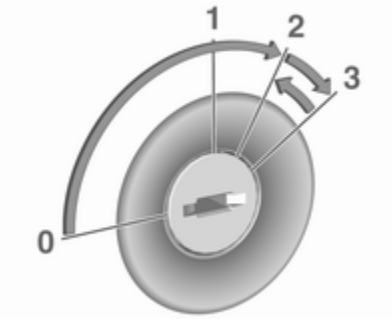
Starting off

Check before starting off

- tyre pressure and condition ⇨ 256, ⇨ 295
- engine oil level and fluid levels ⇨ 232.
- all windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational
- proper position of mirrors ⇨ 40, seats ⇨ 48 and seat belts ⇨ 58
- brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet

Starting the engine

Ignition switch



- Turn key to position **2**.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

  Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal.

  Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Diesel engines: wait until control indicator ⌇ for preheating extinguishes.
- Turn key to position **3** and release after engine has been started.

Starting the engine ⇨ 160.

To turn the key back from position **2** to **1** or **0**, first push the key all the way in towards the steering column.

Power button

- Press **Engine Start/Stop** for a few seconds until green LED illuminates.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

  Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal.

  Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Diesel engines: wait until control indicator ⌇ for preheating extinguishes.

- Press **Engine Start/Stop** and release.

Starting the engine ⇨ 160.

Stop-start system

If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill and certain conditions are fulfilled, an Autostop is activated.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

A restart is indicated by the needle at the idle speed position in the tachometer.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Parking

⚠ Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

  For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch Ⓟ for a minimum of one second until control indicator Ⓟ illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 110.
- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

  If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

  For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

For vehicles with manual transmission automated, the key can only be removed from the ignition switch when the parking brake is applied.

- Lock the vehicle with 🔒 on the radio remote control.

  Activate the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 37.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 231.

Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Keys, locks ⇨ 21, Laying-up the vehicle for a long period of time ⇨ 230.

Keys, doors and windows

Keys, locks **21**
Keys 21
Radio remote control 22
Electronic key system 23
Memorised settings 25
Central locking system 25
Automatic locking 30
Child locks 31
Doors **31**
Load compartment 31
Vehicle security **37**
Anti-theft locking system 37
Anti-theft alarm system 37
Immobiliser 39
Exterior mirrors **40**
Convex shape 40
Electric adjustment 40
Folding mirrors 40
Heated mirrors 41
Interior mirrors **41**
Manual anti-dazzle 41
Automatic anti-dazzle 42
Windows **42**
Windscreen 42
Manual windows 42
Power windows 42
Heated rear window 44
Sun visors 44
Roof **45**
Sunroof 45

Keys, locks

Keys

Caution
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Replacement keys

The key number is specified on a detachable tag.

The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks ⇨ 275, Central locking ⇨ 25, Starting the engine ⇨ 160.

Radio remote control ⇨ 22.

Electronic key ⇨ 23.

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇨ 266.

Key with foldaway key section

Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

Radio remote control

Enables operation of the following functions via the use of the remote control buttons:

- central locking system ⇨ 25
- anti-theft locking system ⇨ 37
- anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 37
- power windows ⇨ 42
- sunroof ⇨ 45

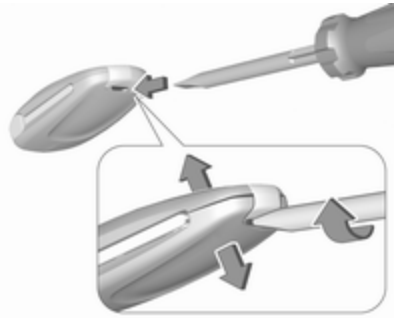
The remote control has a range of up to 100 metres, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Replacing battery in radio remote control

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.



1. Insert flat screwdriver into the slot and separate the back cover from the remote control by slightly turning the screwdriver.
2. Remove and replace battery. Use CR 2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
3. Insert the back cover in the area of the key blade, fold down and close.

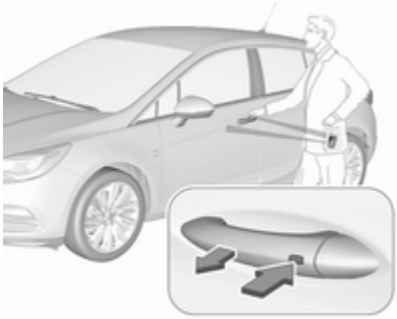
Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in radio remote control.
- The range is exceeded.
- The battery voltage is too low.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range, which will require re-synchronisation.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 25.

Electronic key system



Enables a keyless operation of the following functions:

- central locking system ⇨ 25
- power tailgate ⇨ 31
- ignition switching on and starting the engine ⇨ 160

The electronic key simply needs to be on the driver's person.

Additionally, the electronic key includes the functionality of the radio remote control ⇨ 22.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Note
Do not put the electronic key into the load compartment or in front of the Info-Display.

Replacing battery in electronic key

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 123.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

To replace:

1. Press button at the back of the electronic key unit and extract the key blade from the housing.

2. Insert the key blade again for approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Further insertion of the key blade can damage the housing.
3. Remove and replace battery. Use CR 2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Close the housing and insert key blade.

Electronic key synchronisation

The electronic key synchronises itself automatically during every starting procedure.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in electronic key.
- Electronic key is out of reception range.
- The battery voltage is too low.

- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the electronic key.

Manual unlocking ⇨ 25.

Memorised settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, some functions of the following settings may be automatically memorised by the remote control unit or the electronic key:

- automatic climate control
- lighting
- Infotainment system
- central locking system
- comfort settings

The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is switched on with the memorised key of the remote control unit ⇨ 157 or electronic key ⇨ 23.

A precondition is that **Personalisation by Driver** is activated in the personal settings of the Info-Display. This must be set for each remote control unit or electronic key which is used. The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

The assigned memory position of the power seat is automatically recalled when switching on ignition and **Auto Memory Recall** is activated in the Info-Display for the memorised remote control or electronic key.

Power seat ⇨ 51.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks the respective door. Pulling the handle once more opens the door.

Note
In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Note
A short time after unlocking with the remote control the doors are locked automatically if no door has been opened. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Remote control operation

Unlocking

Press 🔓.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing once. To unlock all doors and load compartment, press twice.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

The setting can be saved for the remote control being used. Memorised settings ⇨ 25.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate ⇨ 31.

Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

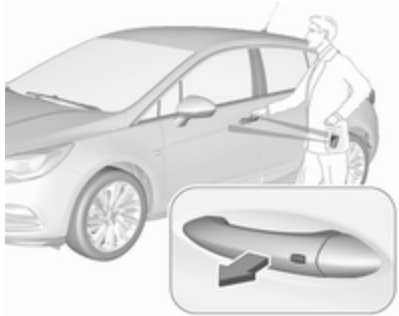
Press .

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Electronic key system operation



The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

Unlocking

Press the button on a front door handle and pull the handle.

Unlocking mode can be set in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. Two settings are selectable:

- All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing the button on any exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap will be unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle once. To unlock front doors and load compartment, press button twice.

The setting can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Locking

Press the button on a front door handle.

All doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap will be locked.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than five seconds since unlocking.
- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within 3 s to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more electronic keys in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one electronic key is taken out of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened handsfree via moving the foot below the rear bumper or by pushing the touchpad switch under the brand emblem when the electronic key is in range. The doors remain locked. Load compartment ⇨ 31.

Operation with buttons on the electronic key

The central locking system can also be operated with the buttons on the electronic key.

Press 🔓 to unlock.

Press 🔒 to lock.

Press 🚗 twice to unlock and open only the power tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, 🚗 must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

Remote control operation ⇨ 25.

Passive locking

Automatic locking ⇨ 30.

Confirmation

Operation of central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning flashers. A precondition is that the setting is activated in the vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Central locking buttons

Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from the passenger compartment via a switch in the driver's door panel.

Press 🔒 to lock.

Press 🔓 to unlock.

Operation with the key in case of a central locking system fault

In case of a fault, e.g. vehicle battery or remote control/electronic key battery is discharged, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.

Remote control: to remove the cap, insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Keys ⇨ 21.

Electronic key: to remove the cap, press button at the back and extract the key blade from the housing. Insert the key into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Electronic key system ⇨ 23.

Manual unlocking

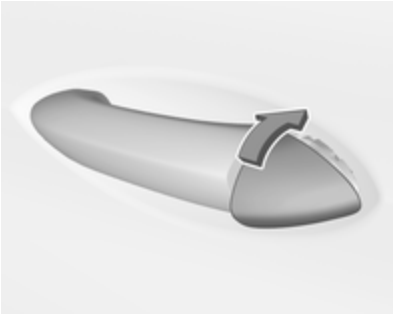
Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting and turning the key in the lock cylinder.

The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle twice or by pressing 🔓 in the driver's door panel. The load compartment and fuel filler flap will possibly not be unlocked.

By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

Manual locking

Push inside locking knob of all doors except driver's door or press 🔒 in the driver's door panel. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder. The fuel filler flap and tailgate are possibly not locked.



After locking, cover the lock cylinder with the cap: insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

Automatic locking

Automatic locking after driving off

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap after driving off and exceeding a certain speed.

When at a standstill after driving, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically as soon as the key is removed from the ignition switch, or with electronic key system when the ignition is switched off.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be set in the menu **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

The setting can be saved for the remote control or electronic key being used ⇨ 25.

Automatic relock after unlocking

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap a short time after unlocking with the remote control or electronic key, provided no door has been opened.

Activation or deactivation of automatic relock can be set in the menu **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

The setting can be saved for the remote control or electronic key being used ⇨ 25.

Passive locking

On vehicles with electronic key system, this feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if an electronic key has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the electronic key does not remain within the vehicle.

If the electronic key remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more electronic keys in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one electronic key is taken out of the vehicle.

To prevent passive locking of the vehicle e.g. when refuelling or if passengers remain in the vehicle, the system must be disabled.

To disable the system, press the central locking button for a few seconds while one door is open. An acoustic signal sounds three times to confirm deactivation. The function remains disabled until the central locking button is pressed or the ignition is switched on.

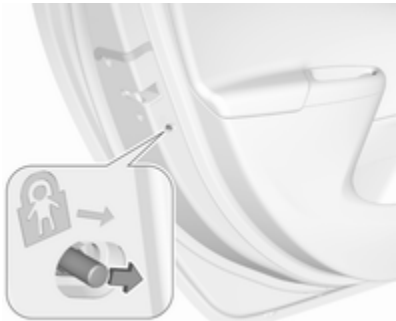
Activation or deactivation of passive locking can be set in the menu **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

The setting can be saved for the electronic key being used ⇨ 25.

Child locks



⚠ Warning

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Move the pin in the rear door to the front. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

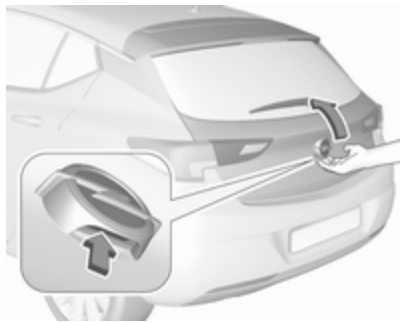
To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.

Doors

Load compartment

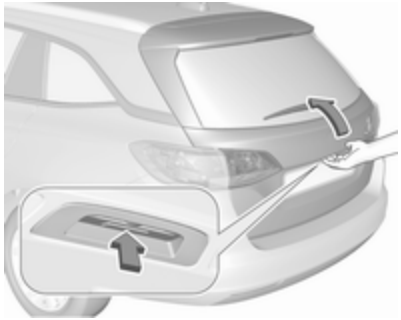
Tailgate

Opening
5-door Hatchback



After unlocking, push the touchpad switch under the brand emblem and open the tailgate.

Sports Tourer



After unlocking, push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate manually.

Central locking system ⇨ 25.

Closing

Use one of the interior handles.

Do not push the touchpad switch whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Central locking system ⇨ 25.

Power tailgate

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power tailgate. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the movable tailgate when operating. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped during operating and no one is standing within the moving area.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing twice on the electronic key. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.
- Handsfree operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.
- The touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding and in the open tailgate.
- The switch on the inside of the driver's door.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary and with selector lever in **P**.

The turn signal lights flash and a chime sounds when the power tailgate is operating.

Note
Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the electronic key, or with the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding or via handsfree operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle. A precondition is that the electronic key is outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the tailgate.

Do not leave the electronic key in the load compartment.

Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

Central locking system ⇨ 25.

Operation with the electronic key

Press ⚟ twice to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, ⚟ must be pressed longer than during locking or unlocking.

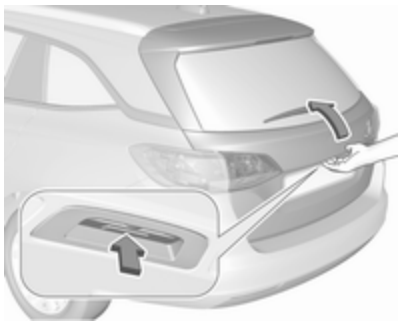
Handsfree operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper

To open or close the tailgate, move the foot below the rear bumper back and forth in the area shown in the illustration. If equipped with parking assist, the area is recognisable below the sensor shown. Do not hold the foot longer or move too slow below the bumper. The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the tailgate.

⚠ Danger

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during handsfree operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

Operation with the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding



To open the tailgate, press the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the tailgate.

To close, press in the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.

Operation with the switch on the inside of the driver's door

Press on the inside of the driver's door until the tailgate starts to open or close.

Stop or change direction of movement

To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

- press once on the electronic key, or
- press the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding, or

- press on the open tailgate, or
- press on the inside of the driver's door.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

Operation modes

The power tailgate has three modes of operation, which are controlled by the switch in the driver's door. To change the mode, turn the switch:

- Normal mode **MAX**: Power tailgate opens to full height.
- Intermediate mode **3/4**: Power tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be adjusted.
- Mode **Off**: Tailgate can only be operated manually.

Adjust reduced opening height in intermediate mode

1. Turn operation mode switch to **3/4**.
2. Open power tailgate with any operation switch.
3. Stop movement at the desired height by pressing any operation switch. If required, manually move the stopped tailgate to the desired position.

4. Press and hold the button on the inside of the open tailgate for three seconds.

Note
Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.

A chime sound indicates the new setting and the turn signal lights will flash. The reduced height can only set at an opening angle of above 30°.

When turning the adjuster wheel in the driver's door to intermediate mode **3/4**, the power tailgate will stop opening at the newly set position.

The tailgate can only be held open if a minimum height is exceeded (minimum opening angle from 30°). The opening height cannot be programmed below that height.

Safety function

If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly. Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate the function. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on the side edges. If the sensors detect obstacles between tailgate and chassis, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually.

The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with factory-fitted towing equipment and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the touchpad switch or closed with in the open tailgate. Ensure that there are no obstacles in the moving area.

Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the function is disabled for some time. Move tailgate manually into end position to reset the system.

General hints for operating tailgate

⚠ Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check overhead obstructions, e.g. a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

Note

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

Note

The operation of the power tailgate is disabled under low vehicle battery conditions. In this case, the tailgate may not even by manually operable.

Note

With the power tailgate disabled and all doors unlocked, the tailgate can only be operated manually. In this event, manually closing the tailgate requires significantly greater force.

Note

At low outside temperatures the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this event, lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Vehicle security

Anti-theft locking system

⚠ Warning

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

Activating

Press 🔒 on the radio remote control twice within five seconds.

Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the anti-theft locking system.

It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment
- vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition

Activation

All doors must be closed and the electronic key of the electronic key system must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- Radio remote control: self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing 🔒 once.
- Electronic key system: self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing the button on any exterior door handle.

- Radio remote control or electronic key: directly by pressing twice within five seconds.
- Electronic key system with passive locking enabled: briefly activated after passive locking occurs.

Note
Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers, and open windows or sunroof, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination

Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows and sunroof.
2. Press . LED in the button illuminates for a maximum of ten minutes.
3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Status LED

Status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:

LED illuminates	:	test, arming delay
LED flashes quickly	:	doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault

Status after system is armed:

LED flashes slowly : system is armed

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

Deactivation

Radio remote control: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing 🔓 deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

Electronic key system: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing the button on any exterior door handle deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The electronic key must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing 🔓, by pressing the switch on the door handle with electronic key system or switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control. Additionally a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre after switching on the ignition.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

Immobiliser

The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

If the control indicator 🔒 flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system; the engine cannot be started. Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt.

If the control indicator 🔒 continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using the spare key and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Note
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags may cause interference with the key. Do not have it placed near the key when starting the vehicle.

Note
The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it and switch on the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 25, ⇨ 37.

Control indicator 🔒 ⇨ 113.

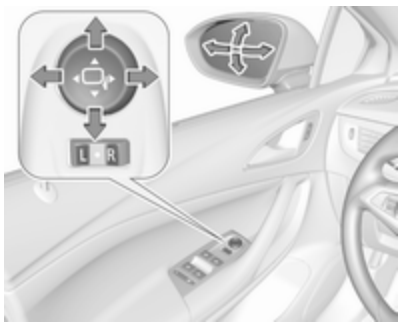
Exterior mirrors

Convex shape

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Side blind spot alert ⇨ 209.

Electric adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by switching the control to left **(L)** or right **(R)**. Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

In position ● no mirror is selected.

Folding mirrors

For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric folding

Switch control to ●, then push the control ▽ down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push the control down again - both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pressing down the control will only electrically extend the other mirror.

Heated mirrors

Operated by pressing ⧈.

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Interior mirrors

Manual anti-dazzle

To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Automatic anti-dazzle

Dazzle from following vehicles is automatically reduced, when driving in the dark.

Windows

Windscreen

Windscreen stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windscreen replacement

Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Opel specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and/or messages from these systems.

Manual windows

The door windows can be opened or closed with the window cranks.

Power windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows. Retained power off ⇨ 160.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety function

If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

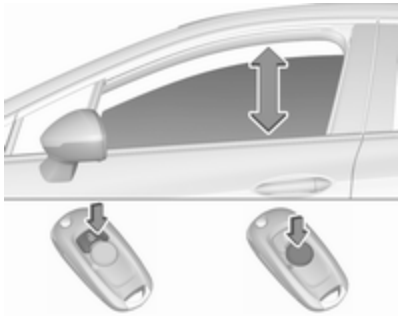
In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

Child safety system for rear windows

Press ⊠ to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press ⊠ again.

Operating windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold to open windows.

Press and hold to close windows.

Release button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.
4. Push switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
5. Repeat for each window.

Heated rear window

Operated by pressing .

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

The covers of the mirrors should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Roof

Sunroof

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.

Open or close

Press or gently to the first detent: sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press or firmly to the second detent then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Raise or close

Press or : sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.

Sunblind

The sunblind is manually operated.

Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

General hints

Safety function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

Closing sunroof from outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.

Press and hold to close the sunroof.

Release the button to stop the movement.

Initialising after a power failure

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your workshop.

Seats, restraints

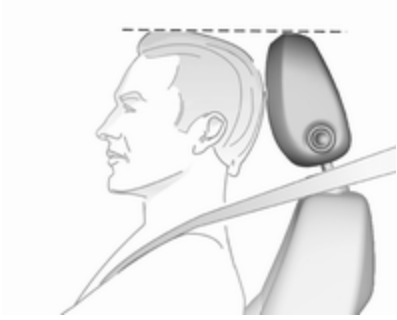
Head restraints **47**
Front seats **48**
Seat position 48
Manual seat adjustment 49
Power seat adjustment 51
Armrest 54
Heating 55
Ventilating 55
Massage 56
Rear seats **56**
Armrest 56
Heating 57
Seat belts **57**
Three-point seat belt 58
Airbag system **59**
Front airbag system 63
Side airbag system 63
Curtain airbag system 64
Airbag deactivation 64
Child restraints **66**
Child restraint systems 66
Child restraint installation locations 68

Head restraints

Position

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

Adjustment

Head restraints on front seats

Height adjustment
Press release button, adjust height, engage.

Head restraints on rear seats

Height adjustment
Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal of rear head restraints
E.g. for load compartment extension ⇨ 74.

Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Front seats

Seat position

⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.

⚠ Danger

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

⚠ Warning

Never store any objects under the seats.

- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering wheel while the arm is fully extended and shoulders on the backrest.
- Adjust the steering wheel ⇨ 92.
- Adjust the head restraint ⇨ 47.
- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Manual seat adjustment

Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

Longitudinal adjustment

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Backrest inclination

Turn handwheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat height

Lever pumping motion

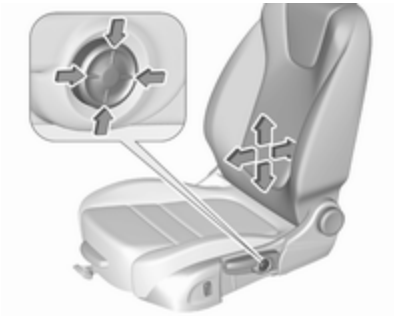
up : seat higher
down : seat lower

Seat inclination

Press switch

top : front end higher
bottom : front end lower

Lumbar support



Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Adjustable thigh support

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Power seat adjustment

⚠ Warning

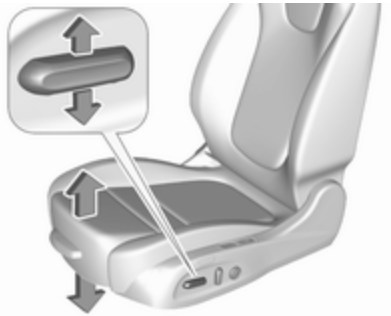
Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped.

Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

Longitudinal adjustment

Move switch forwards/backwards.

Seat height



Move switch upwards/downwards.

Seat inclination

Tilt front of switch upwards/ downwards.

Backrest inclination

Tilt switch forwards/backwards.

Lumbar support

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Adjustable thigh support

Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

Side bolster

Adjust seat backrest width to suit personal requirements.

Press to reduce backrest width.

Press to increase backrest width.

Memory function for power seat adjustment

Two different driver's seat settings can be stored.

Memorised settings ⇨ 25, Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Storing memory position

- Adjust driver's seat to desired position.
- Press and hold **MEM** and **1** or **2** simultaneously until a chime sounds.

Recall of memory positions

Press and hold **1** or **2** until the stored seat position has been reached. Releasing the button during seat movement cancels the recall.

Automatic recall of memory positions

Memory positions are assigned to the driver (1 or 2) using the respective key and are automatically recalled when

the ignition is switched on. In addition, a message in the Driver Information Centre indicates the driver number, identified by the used key. If the ignition is switched on more than three subsequent times with the same key, the message will not be displayed again until another key is being used.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

Precondition is that **Personalisation by Driver** and **Auto Memory Recall** is activated in the personal settings of the Info-Display.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in the **Vehicle** menu in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Easy exit function

For a convenient exit out of the vehicle, the power driver seat moves rearwards when vehicle is stationary.

To activate the easy exit function:

- set selector lever to position **P** (automatic transmission)
- apply parking brake (manual transmission)
- switch off ignition
- remove key from the ignition switch
- open the driver's door

If the door is already open, switch off ignition to activate easy exit.

To stop movement, press one of the memory or power seat controls.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in the **Vehicle** menu in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Safety function

If the driver's seat encounters resistance during movement, the recall may stop. After removing the obstruction, press and hold the appropriate memory position button for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again. If the recall does not operate, consult a workshop.

Overload

If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

Note
After an accident in which airbags have been deployed, the memory function for each position button will be deactivated.

Armrest

The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.

Armrest storage ⇨ 73.

Heating

Adjust heating to the desired setting by pressing for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

The seat heating will be reduced automatically from highest level to medium level after 30 minutes.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Automatic seat heating

Depending on the equipment, the automatic seat heating can be enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

When enabled, the heating of the seats will be activated automatically at vehicle start. The activation is based on several parameters such as vehicle interior temperature, intensity and direction of the sun and temperature setting of the electronic climate control system for the driver and passenger side.

As the vehicle's interior warms up, the seat heating level will be reduced automatically until it finally goes off.

The seat heating level being provided during the automatic operation is shown by heated seat indicator lights.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the automatic seat heating feature will not activate the seat heating for that seat.

The seat heating buttons can be pressed at any time to exit the automatic seat heating for the respective seat and control the seat heating manually instead.

Ventilating

Adjust ventilating to the desired setting by pressing for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Ventilated seats are operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Massage

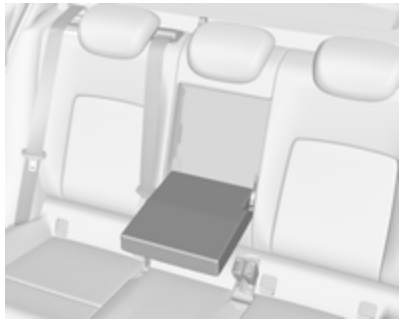
Press to switch on the back massage function.

To switch off, press again.

After ten minutes the massage function is switched off automatically.

Rear seats

Armrest



Fold armrest down.

Heating

Activate seat heating by pressing for the respective rear outer seat. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

Press once more to deactivate seat heating.

Prolonged use for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Seat belts

The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, holding the occupants in the seat position. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Fasten seat belt before each trip.

In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. Child restraint system ⇨ 66.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, soiling and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced by a workshop. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.

Note
Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat belt reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for front seats by control indicators and ², or for rear seats by the symbol in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 108.

Belt force limiters

Stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

Belt pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front and rear outboard seat belts are tightened. The front seat belts and the outer seat belts are tightened by one pretensioner per seat.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator ⇨ 109.

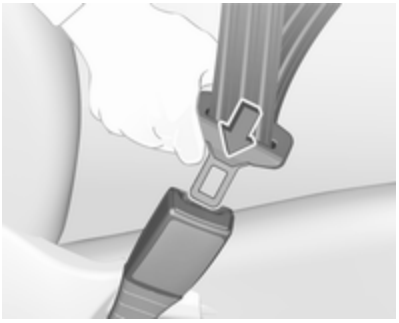
Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

Note
Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt tensioner. Do not make any modification to belt tensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Three-point seat belt

Fasten

Withdraw the belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Tighten the lap belt regularly whilst driving by pulling the shoulder belt.



Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

⚠ Warning

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder ⇨ 108.

Unfasten

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Using the seat belt while pregnant

⚠ Warning

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Warning

The airbag system deploys in an explosive manner, repairs must be performed by skilled personnel only.

⚠ Warning

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, seat belts,

airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, inner door seals including the speakers, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar trim, front sensors, side impact sensors or airbag wiring.

Note
The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.

Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials. Have damaged covers replaced by a workshop.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Control indicator for airbag systems ⇨ 109.

Child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag systems

Warning according to ECE R94.02:

EN: NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

DE: Nach hinten gerichtete Kindersitze NIEMALS auf einem Sitz verwenden, der durch einen davor befindlichen AKTIVEN AIRBAG geschützt ist, da dies den TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN DES KINDES zur Folge haben kann.

FR: NE JAMAIS utiliser un siège d'enfant orienté vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE ACTIF placé devant lui, sous peine d'infliger des BLESSURES GRAVES, voire MORTELLES à l'ENFANT.

ES: NUNCA utilice un sistema de retención infantil orientado hacia atrás en un asiento protegido por un AIRBAG FRONTAL ACTIVO. Peligro de MUERTE o LESIONES GRAVES para el NIÑO.

RU: ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ устанавливать детское удерживающее устройство лицом назад на сиденье автомобиля, оборудованном фронтальной подушкой безопасности, если ПОДУШКА НЕ ОТКЛЮЧЕНА! Это может привести к СМЕРТИ или СЕРЬЕЗНЫМ ТРАВМАМ РЕБЕНКА.

NL: Gebruik NOOIT een achterwaarts gericht kinderzitje op een stoel met een ACTIEVE AIRBAG ervoor, om DODELIJK of ERNSTIG LETSEL van het KIND te voorkomen.

DA: Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt autostol på et forsæde med AKTIV AIRBAG, BARNET kan komme i LIVSFARE eller komme ALVORLIGT TIL SKADE.

SV: Använd ALDRIG en bakåtvänd barnstol på ett säte som skyddas med en framförvarande AKTIV AIRBAG. DÖDSFALL eller ALLVARLIGA SKADOR kan drabba BARNET.

FI: ÄLÄ KOSKAAN sijoita taaksepäin suunnattua lasten turvaistuinta istuimelle, jonka edessä on AKTIIVINEN TURVATYYNY, LAPSI VOI KUOLLA tai VAMMAUTUA VAKAVASTI.

NO: Bakovervendt barnesikringsutstyr må ALDRI brukes på et sete med AKTIV KOLLISJONSPUTE foran, da det kan føre til at BARNET utsettes for LIVSFARE og fare for ALVORLIGE SKADER.

PT: NUNCA use um sistema de retenção para crianças voltado para trás num banco protegido com um AIRBAG ACTIVO na frente do mesmo, poderá ocorrer a PERDA DE VIDA ou FERIMENTOS GRAVES na CRIANÇA.

IT: Non usare mai un sistema di sicurezza per bambini rivolto all'indietro su un sedile protetto da AIRBAG ATTIVO di fronte ad esso: pericolo di MORTE o LESIONI GRAVI per il BAMBINO!

EL: ΠΟΤΕ μη χρησιμοποιείτε παιδικό κάθισμα ασφαλείας με φορά προς τα πίσω σε κάθισμα που προστατεύεται από μετωπικό ΕΝΕΡΓΟ ΑΕΡΟΣΑΚΟ, διότι το παιδί μπορεί να υποστεί ΘΑΝΑΣΙΜΟ ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ.

PL: NIE WOLNO montować fotelika dziecięcego zwróconego tyłem do kierunku jazdy na fotelu, przed którym znajduje się WŁĄCZONA PODUSZKA POWIETRZNA. Niezastosowanie się do tego zalecenia może być przyczyną ŚMIERCI lub POWAŻNYCH OBRAŻEŃ u DZIECKA.

TR: Arkaya bakan bir çocuk emniyet sistemini KESİNLİKLE önünde bir AKTİF HAVA YASTIĞI ile korunmakta olan bir koltukta kullanmayınız. ÇOCUK ÖLEBİLİR veya AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANABİLİR.

UK: НІКОЛИ не використовуйте систему безпеки для дітей, що встановлюється обличчям назад, на сидінні з УВІМКНЕНОЮ ПОДУШКОЮ БЕЗПЕКИ, інакше це може призвести до СМЕРТІ чи СЕРЙОЗНОГО ТРАВМУВАННЯ ДИТИНИ.

HU: SOHA ne használjon hátrafelé néző biztonsági gyerekülést előlről AKTÍV LÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen, mert a GYERMEK HALÁLÁT vagy KOMOLY SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.

HR: NIKADA nemojte koristiti sustav zadržavanja za djecu okrenut prema natrag na sjedalu s AKTIVNIM ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, to bi moglo dovesti do SMRTI ili OZBILJNJIH OZLJEDA za DIJETE.

SL: NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega varnostnega sedeža, obrnjenega v nasprotni smeri vožnje, na sedež z

AKTIVNO ČELNO ZRAČNO BLAZINO, saj pri tem obstaja nevarnost RESNIH ali SMRTNIH POŠKODB za OTROKA.

SR: NIKADA ne koristiti bezbednosni sistem za decu u kome su deca okrenuta unazad na sedištu sa AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred sedišta zato što DETE može da NASTRADA ili da se TEŠKO POVREDI.

MK: НИКОГАШ не користете детско седиште свртено наназад на седиште заштитено со АКТИВНО ВОЗДУШНО ПЕРНИЧЕ пред него, затоа што детето може ДА ЗАГИНЕ или да биде ТЕШКО ПОВРЕДЕНО.

BG: НИКОГА не използвайте детска седалка, гледаща назад, върху седалка, която е защитена чрез АКТИВНА ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА пред нея - може да се стигне до СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на ДЕТЕТО.

RO: Nu utilizați NICIODATĂ un scaun pentru copil îndreptat spre partea din spate a mașinii pe un scaun protejat de un AIRBAG ACTIV în fața sa; acest lucru poate duce la DECESUL sau VĂTĂMAREA GRAVĂ a COPILULUI.

CS: NIKDY nepoužívejte dětský zádržný systém instalovaný proti směru jízdy na sedadle, které je chráněno před sedadlem AKTIVNÍM AIRBAGEM. Mohlo by dojít k VÁŽNÉMU PORANĚNÍ nebo ÚMRTÍ DÍTĚTE.

SK: NIKDY nepoužívajte detskú sedačku otočenú vzad na sedadle chránenom AKTÍVNYM AIRBAGOM, pretože môže dôjsť k SMRTI alebo VÁŽNYM ZRANENIAM DIEŤAŤA.

LT: JOKIU BŪDU nemontuokite atgal atgręžtos vaiko tvirtinimo sistemos sėdynėje, prieš kurią įrengta AKTYVI ORO PAGALVĖ, nes VAIKAS GALI ŽŪTI arba RIMTAI SUSIŽALOTI.

LV: NEKĀDĀ GADĪJUMĀ neizmantojiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti sēdvietā, kas tiek aizsargāta ar tās priekšā uzstādītu AKTĪVU DROŠĪBAS SPILVENU, jo pretējā gadījumā BĒRNS var gūt SMAGAS TRAUMAS vai IET BOJĀ.

ET: ÄRGE kasutage tahapoole suunatud lapseturvaistet istmel, mille ees on AKTIIVSE TURVAPADJAGA kaitstud iste, sest see võib põhjustada LAPSE SURMA või TÕSISE VIGASTUSE.

MT: QATT tuża trażżin għat-tfal li jħares lejn in-naħa ta' wara fuq sit protett b'AIRBAG ATTIV quddiemu; dan jista' jikkawża l-MEWT jew ĠRIEĦI SERJI lit-TFAL.

GA: Ná húsáid srian sábháilteachta linbh cúil RIAMH ar shuíochán a bhfuil mála aeir ag feidhmiú os a chomhair. Tá baol BÁIS nó GORTÚ DONA don PHÁISTE ag baint leis.

Beyond the warning required by ECE R94.02, for safety reasons a forward-facing child restraint system must only be used subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ⇨ 68.

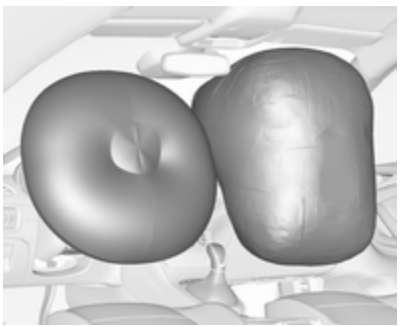
The airbag label is located on both sides of the front passenger sun visor.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 64.

Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

⚠ Warning

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position ⇨ 48.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

Side airbag system

The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.

The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

⚠Warning

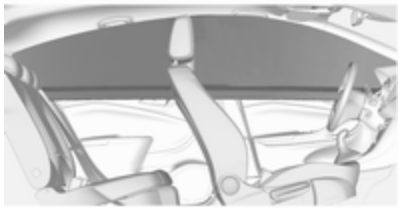
Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Note
Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

Curtain airbag system

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

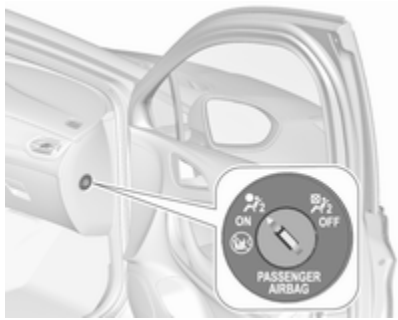
⚠Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.

Airbag deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated for child restraint system on the passenger seat according to the instructions in the table ⇨ 68. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the passenger side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:

OFF : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator OFF illuminates continuously in the overhead console.

ON : front passenger airbag is active

⚠ Danger

Deactivate passenger airbag only in combination with the use of a child restraint system, subject to the instructions and restrictions in the table ⇨ 68.

Otherwise, there is a risk of fatal injury for a person occupying a seat with a deactivated front passenger airbag.

If the control indicator illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.

Consult a workshop immediately if neither of the two control indicators are illuminated.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation ⇨ 109.

Child restraints

Child restraint systems

⚠ Danger

If using a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag system for the front passenger seat must be deactivated. This also applies to certain forward-facing child restraint systems as indicated in the tables ⇨ 68.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 64.

Airbag label ⇨ 59.

We recommend a child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle. For further information, contact your workshop.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions as well as to those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

Child restraint systems can be fastened with:

- Three-point seat belt
- ISOFIX brackets
- Top-tether anchor

Three-point seat belt

Child restraint systems can be fastened by using a three-point seat belt. Depending on the size of the used child restraint systems, up to three child restraint systems can be attached to the rear seats. After fastening the child restraint system the seat belt has to be tightened⇨ 68.

ISOFIX brackets

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the ISOFIX table ⇨ 68.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest.

An i-size child restraint system is an universal ISOFIX child restraint system according UN Regulation No. 129.

All i-size child restraint systems can be used on any vehicle seat suitable for i-size, i-size table ⇨ 68.

Either a Top-tether strap or a support leg must be used in addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

i-size child seats and vehicle seats with i-size approval are marked with i-size symbol, see illustration.

Top-tether anchors

Top-tether anchors are marked with the symbol for a child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the Top-tether strap to the Top-tether anchors.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF ⇨ 68.

Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Suitable are restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

The following child restraints are recommended for the following weight classes:

Maxi Cosi Cabriofix for children up to 13 kg for group 0, group 0+ and Duo Plus for children from 13 kg to 18 kg in group I.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following tables.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Child restraint installation locations

Permissible options for fastening a child restraint system with a three-point seat belt

	On front passenger seat			
Weight class	activated airbag	deactivated airbag	On rear outboard seats	On rear centre seat
Group 0: up to 10 kg	X	U[1,2]	U/L[3]	U
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	X	U[1,2]	U/L[3]	U
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	X	U[1,2]	U/L[3,4]	U[4]
Group II: 15 to 25 kg	U[1,2]	X	U/L[3,4]	U[4]
Group III: 22 to 36 kg	U[1,2]	X	U/L[3,4]	U[4]

U : universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt
L : suitable for particular child restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The child restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type (refer to the vehicle type list of the child restraint system)
X : no child restraint system permitted in this weight class
[1] : move seat forwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point
[2] : move seat upwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side
[3] : move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards as far as necessary
[4] : adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required

Permissible options for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system with ISOFIX brackets

Weight class	Size class	Fixture	On front passenger seat activated airbag	On front passenger seat deactivated airbag	On rear outboard seats	On rear centre seat
Group 0: up to 10 kg	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
	E	ISO/R1	X	X	IL[3]	X
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	X	IL[3]	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	X	IL[3]	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	X	IL[3]	X
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	X	IL[3,4]	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	X	IL[3,4]	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	X	IL, IUF[3,4]	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	X	IL, IUF[3,4]	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	X	IL, IUF[3,4]	X
Group II: 15 to 25 kg			X	X	IL[3,4]	X
Group III: 22 to 36 kg			X	X	IL[3,4]	X

IL : suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories. The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type (refer to the vehicle type list of the child restraint system)
IUF : suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this weight class
X : no ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class
1 : move seat forwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point
2 : move seat height adjustment upwards as far as necessary and adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side
3 : move the respective front seat ahead of the child restraint system forwards as far as necessary
4 : adjust the respective headrest as necessary or remove if required

ISOFIX size class and seat device

A – ISO/F3 : forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg
B – ISO/F2 : forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg
B1 – ISO/F2X : forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg
C – ISO/R3 : rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 18 kg
D – ISO/R2 : rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 18 kg
E – ISO/R1 : rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg
F– ISO/L1 : left lateral facing position child restraint system (carry-cot)
G – ISO/L2 : right lateral facing position child restraint system (carry-cot)

Permissible options for fitting an i-Size child restraint system with ISOFIX brackets

	On front passenger seat			
	activated airbag	deactivated airbag	On rear outboard seats	On rear centre seat
i-Size child restraint systems	X	X	i - U	X

i - U : suitable for i-Size 'universal' forward and rearward facing child restraint systems
X : seating position not suitable for i-Size 'universal' child restraint systems

Storage

Storage compartments **72**
Glovebox 72
Cupholders 72
Front storage 73
Armrest storage 73
Load compartment **74**
Rear storage 80
Load compartment cover 80
Rear floor storage cover 82
Lashing eyes 82
Cargo management system 83
Safety net 85
Warning triangle 87
First aid kit 88
Roof rack system **89**
Roof rack 89
Loading information **89**

Storage compartments

⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments. Otherwise, the storage compartment lid could open and vehicle occupants could be injured by objects being thrown around in the event of hard braking, a sudden change in direction or an accident.

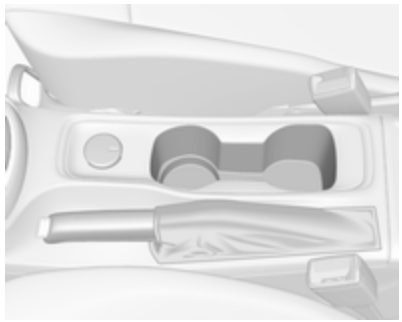
Glovebox

The glovebox features a pen holder, a coin holder and an adapter for the locking wheel nuts.

The glovebox may also contain a CD player.

The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

Cupholders



Cupholders are located in the centre console.

Depending on the version, cupholders are located under a cover in the centre console. Slide cover backwards.

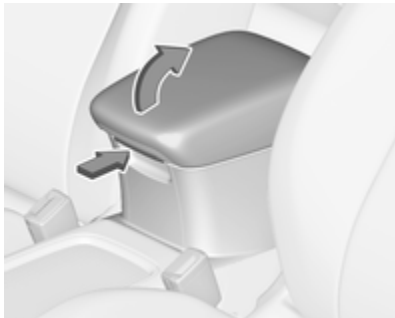
Front storage

A storage compartment is located next to the steering wheel.

A combined storage and mobile device compartment is located in the instrument panel center stack.

Armrest storage

Storage under the front armrest



Press button to fold up the armrest. The armrest must be in rearmost position.

Load compartment

Depending on the equipment, the rear seat backrest is divided into two or three parts. All parts can be folded down.

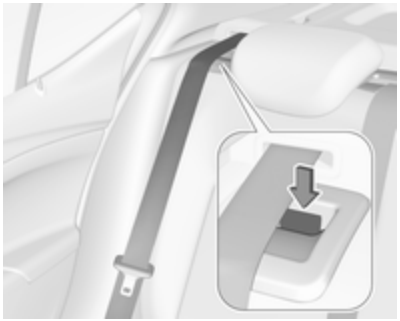
Before folding rear seat backrests, execute the following if necessary:

- 5-door hatchback: remove the load compartment cover ⇨ 80.
- Sports Tourer: remove roller blind ⇨ 80.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ⇨ 47.
- Remove the rear head restraints to have the backrests fully rest on the seat cushions ⇨ 47.

Load compartment extension (two-part rear seat backrest), 5-door Hatchback

- Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

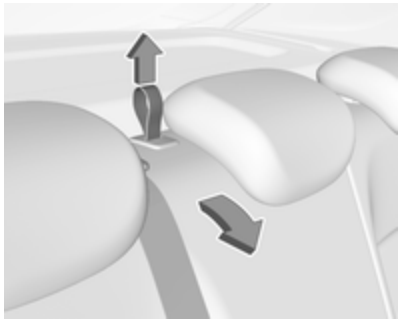
⚠ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Load compartment extension (three-part rear seat backrest), 5-door Hatchback

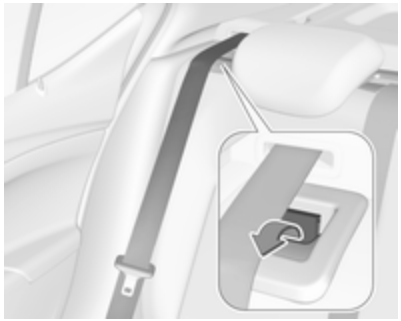
- Fold up the rear armrest.



- Pull the loop and fold down the backrest of the centre seat.
- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

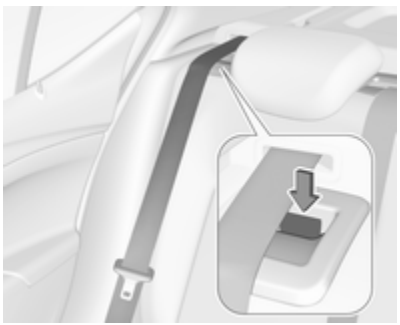
⚠ Warning

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. Risk of injury due to bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.



- Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.

- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

⚠Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Load compartment extension (two-part rear seat backrest), Sports Tourer

- Insert latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage, see illustration.

- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.
- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

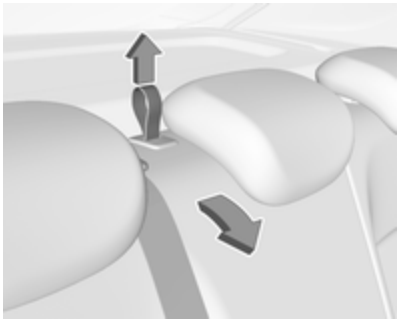
⚠ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

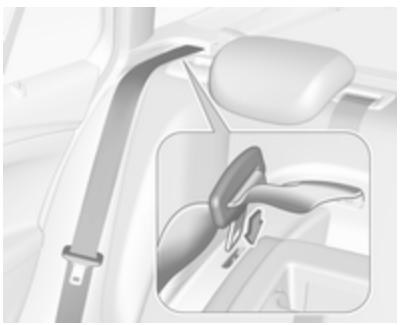
The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Load compartment extension (three-part rear seat backrest), Sports Tourer

- Fold up the rear centre armrest.



- Pull the loop and fold down the backrest of the centre seat.



- Insert latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage, see illustration.

- Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

⚠Warning

Take care when folding down the right outer seat backrest if the centre seat backrest is already folded down. Risk of injury due to bolt protruding from the inner side of the backrest.

- Alternatively fold seat backrests from the load compartment: pull switch on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat backrest.

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the rear backrests from the load compartment. The backrest is folded with considerable power. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.

- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

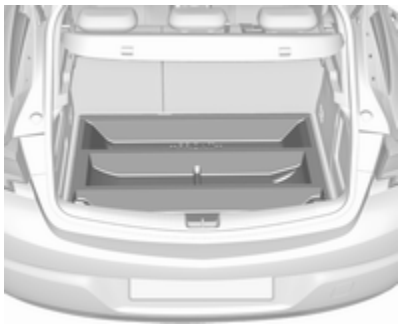
⚠ Warning

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

Rear storage

Storage box



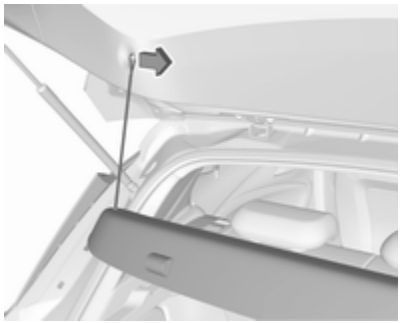
A storage box is located in the load compartment. Remove the cover to gain access to the storage box. Rear floor storage cover ⇨ 82.

Load compartment cover

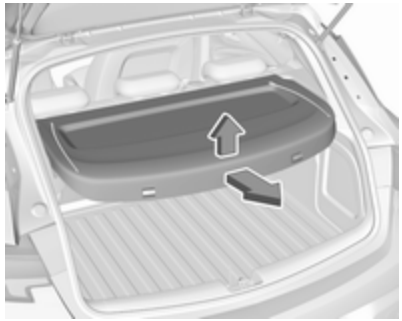
Do not place any objects on the cover.

5-door hatchback

Removing



Unhook retaining strings from tailgate.



Lift cover at the rear and push it upwards at the front.

Remove the cover.

Fitting

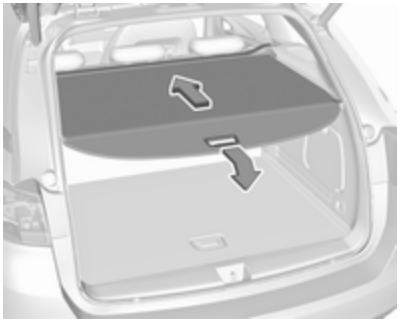
Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach retaining strings to tailgate.

Sports Tourer

Closing roller blind

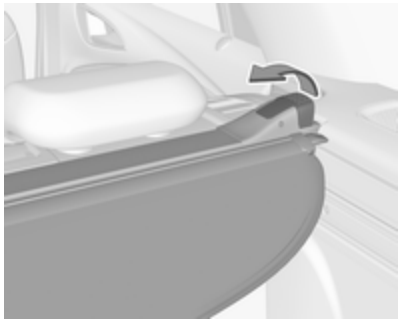
Pull the roller blind using the handle towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the sideward retainers.

Opening roller blind



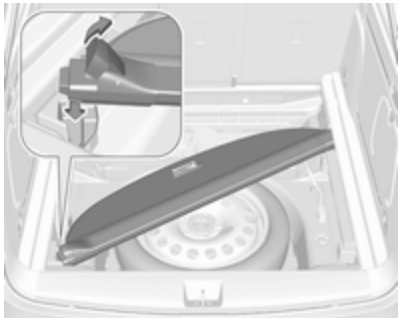
Pull the handle at the end of the roller blind to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.

Removing roller blind



Open the roller blind.

Pull the release lever on the right side up and hold it. Lift the roller blind first on the right side and remove from retainers.



All engine versions, except CNG: The removed roller blind can be stored under the rear floor cover as shown in the illustration. Insert the left side of the rolled up cover first in the front right recess, pull the release lever up and insert the right side in the front left recess.

Rear floor storage cover ⇨ 82.

Installing roller blind

Insert the left side of the roller blind in the recess, then pull the release lever up and hold and insert the right side of the roller blind in the recess and engage.

Rear floor storage cover

Caution
Vehicle versions with CNG: Do not stow any objects in the compartment beneath the rear floor cover.

Rear floor cover

5-door Hatchback

The rear floor cover can be removed. Raise cover at the rear and slightly rotate at one side before removing.

Sports Tourer

Pull the handle and fold the rear part of the cover forward.

Set up the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

Lashing eyes

The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

5-door Hatchback

First remove the rear floor storage cover to get access to the lashing eyes.

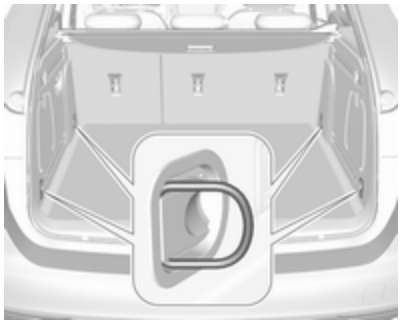
On vehicles equipped with a spare wheel, the front lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls.

On vehicles equipped with tyre repair kit, the front lashing eyes are located underneath the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. To get access to the lashing eyes, open the perforated parts of the cover by using the screwdriver. Vehicle tools ⇨ 254.

Stick the screwdriver through the cover as shown in the illustration and fold up the perforated part of the cover.

Fold up the lashing eyes by using the screwdriver.

Sports Tourer



Front and rear lashing eyes are located at the sidewalls. Fold up the lashing eyes to use and fold down when not required.

Cargo management system

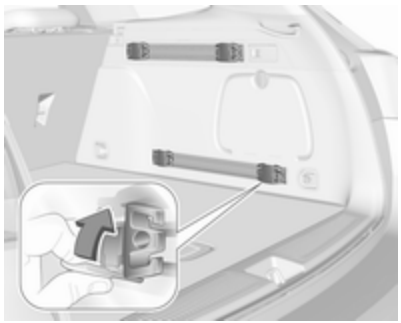
The FlexOrganizer is a flexible system for dividing up the load compartment.

The system consists of:

- adapters
- mesh pockets
- hooks
- service box
- strap set

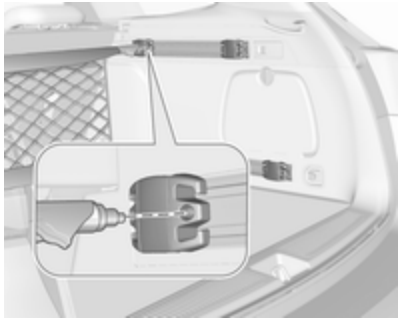
The components are fitted in rails on both side panels using adapters and hooks.

Installation of adapters in the rails



Fold open the handle plate, insert the adapter into the upper and lower groove of the rail and move to the required position. Turn the handle plate upwards to lock the adapter. To remove, turn the handle plate down and move out of the rail.

Variable partition net



Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. Stick together the halves of the net rods.

To install, push rods together a little and insert into the relevant openings in the adapters.

To remove, press the net rods together and remove from the adapters.

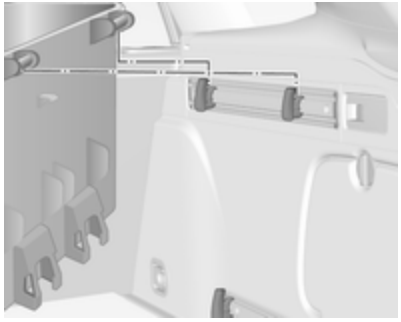
Net pocket

Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. The net pocket can be suspended from the adapters.

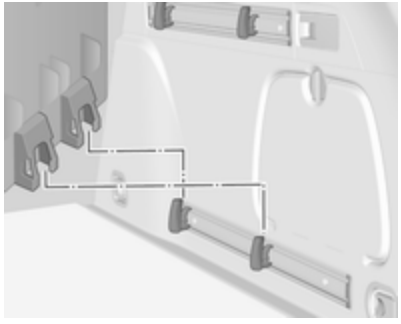
Installation of hooks in the rails

Insert the hook in the desired position first in the upper groove of the rail and then press in the lower groove. To remove, first pull out of the upper groove.

Service box

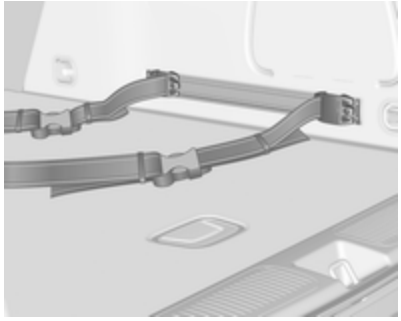


Install two hooks in the upper rail. Insert the upper brackets of the box from above into the hooks.



Alternatively install both hooks in the lower rail. Plug in the lower brackets of the box from above into the lower hooks.

Strap set



Insert the adapters of the strap set in a rail. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

The strap set has two locks to open.

The belt can be tightened.

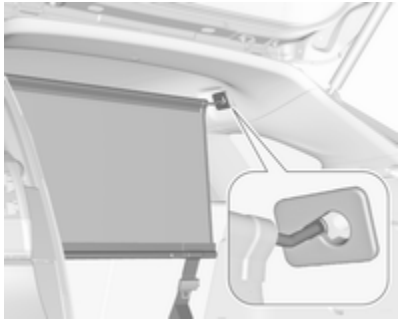
Safety net

The safety net is available on the Sports Tourer and can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear seat backrests are folded, behind the front seats.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

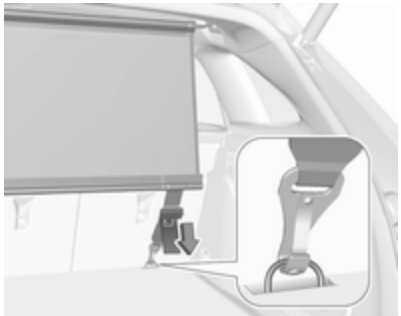
Installation

Behind the rear seats



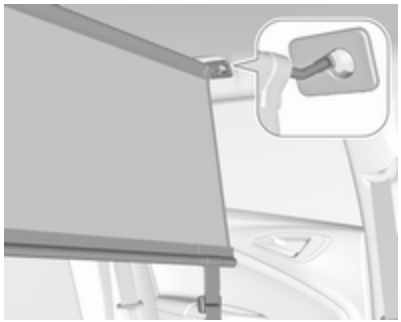
- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the rear seats: suspend

and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.

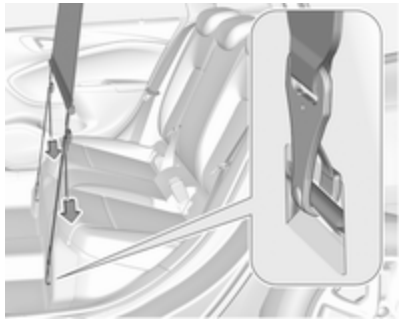


- Attach the hooks of safety net straps in loops underneath the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. To get access to the loops, open the perforated parts in the floor cover on both sides by using the screwdriver and fold up the loops. Attach the hooks to the loops.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Rear seat backrests must be raised up.

Behind the front seats

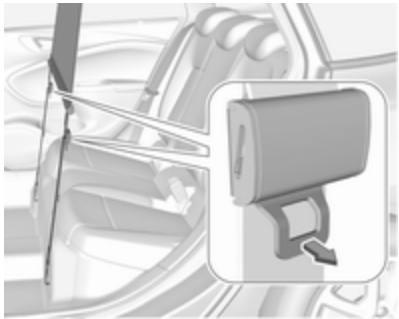


- There are installation openings on both sides in the roof frame above the front seats: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at the other side.



- Attach hooks of safety net straps to loops in the floor in front of the rear seats. To get access to the loops, push in the perforated parts in the floor cover on both sides. Attach the hooks to the loops.
- Tension both straps by pulling at the loose end.
- Push down head restraints and fold down rear seat backrests ⇨ 74.

Removal



Pull the flap at the tightener on both sides to release the straps. Detach hooks from the eyes.

Unhook the safety net rods from the brackets in the roof frame.

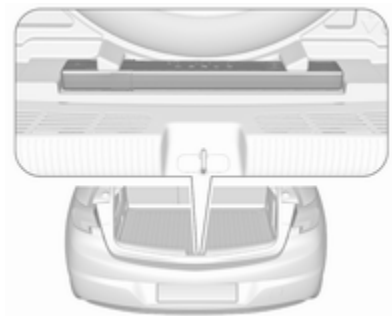
Roll up the net and secure with a strap.

Stowing

All engine versions, except CNG: The removed safety net can be stored under the rear floor cover ⇨ 82.

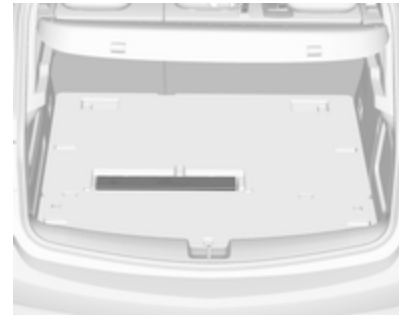
Warning triangle

5-door hatchback



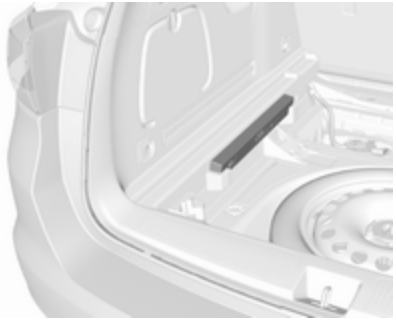
Stow the warning triangle in the recess in front of the tailgate.

5-door hatchback with CNG



Stow the warning triangle in the recess beneath the rear floor cover.

Sports Tourer



Stow the warning triangle in the recess under the rear floor cover on the right or left side.

First aid kit

Stow the first aid kit in the compartment in the left side wall.

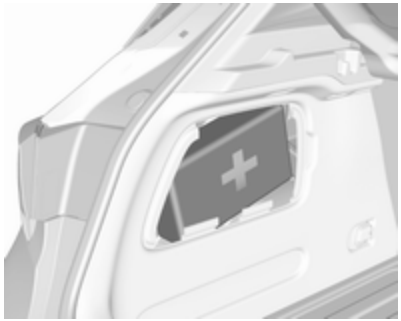


Illustration shows 5-door Hatchback.

To open the compartment, disengage cover and open.

Illustration shows Sports Tourer.

To open the cover turn knob.

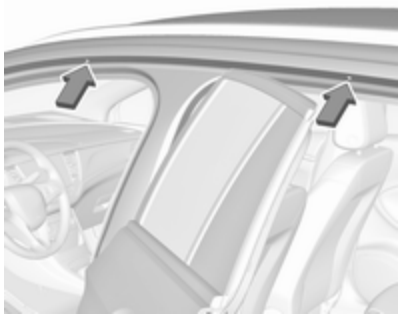
Roof rack system

Roof rack

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

Mounting roof rack

5-door Hatchback, Sports Tourer



Open all doors.

Mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions delivered with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

⚠Warning

Sports Tourer

Roof railings are a styling element only and not designed to carry any load. Installation of roof racks or other accessory is not permitted. Use the designated mounting points in the door frames exclusively.

Loading information

- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Make sure that the backrests are securely engaged, i.e. no longer showing the red markings on the side near the release lever. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Prevent sliding of loose objects by securing them with straps attached to the lashing eyes ⇨ 82.

- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Sports Tourer: install safety net when transporting objects in the load compartment.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.

- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification plate ⇨ 282) and the EC kerb weight.

  To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the weights table at the front of this manual.

  The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (fuel tank 90% full).

  Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.
- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently.

  Do not drive faster than 120 km/h.

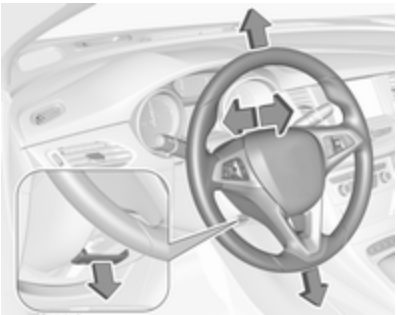
  The permissible roof load is 75 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

Instruments and controls

Controls **92**
Steering wheel adjustment 92
Steering wheel controls 92
Heated steering wheel 93
Horn 93
Windscreen wiper and washer . . 93
Rear window wiper and washer 95
Outside temperature 96
Clock 96
Power outlets 98
Ashtrays 99
Warning lights, gauges and indicators **100**
Instrument cluster 100
Speedometer 103
Odometer 104
Trip odometer 104
Tachometer 105
Fuel gauge 105
Fuel selector 105
Engine coolant temperature gauge 106
Service display 107
Control indicators 108
Turn lights 108
Seat belt reminder 108
Airbag and belt tensioners 109
Airbag deactivation 109
Charging system 110
Malfunction indicator light 110
Brake and clutch system 110
Electric parking brake 110
Electric parking brake fault 110
Antilock brake system (ABS) ... 111
Gear shifting 111
Following distance 111
Lane keep assist 111
Electronic Stability Control off . 111
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system 111
Traction Control system off 112
Preheating 112
Exhaust filter 112
AdBlue 112
Tyre pressure monitoring system 112
Engine oil pressure 112
Low fuel 113
Immobiliser 113
Exterior light 113
High beam 113
High beam assist 113
LED headlights 113
Front fog lights 114
Rear fog light 114
Cruise control 114
Adaptive cruise control 114
Vehicle detected ahead 114
Speed limiter 114
Traffic sign assistant 114
Door open 115
Displays **115**
Driver Information Centre 115
Info Display 121
Vehicle messages **123**
Warning chimes 124
Battery voltage 124
Vehicle personalisation **125**
Telematics service **131**
OnStar 131

Controls

Steering wheel adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering wheel controls

Driver Information Centre, some driver assistance systems, Infotainment system and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

The illustrations show different versions.

Cruise control and speed limiter are operated via the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.

Additionally, forward collision alert can be set by using the controls on the left side of the steering wheel.

Infotainment system can be operated via the controls on the right side of the steering wheel.

Driver assistance systems ⇨ 184.

Further information is available in the Infotainment manual.

Heated steering wheel

Activate heating by pressing ♨. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated quicker and to a higher temperature than the other areas.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

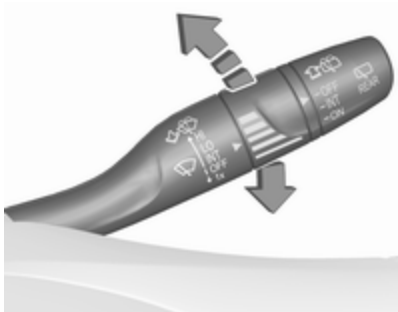
Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Horn

Press 🎺.

Windscreen wiper and washer

Windscreen wiper with adjustable wiper interval



HI : fast
LO : slow
INT : interval wiping
OFF : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

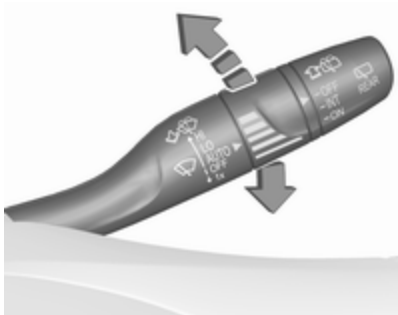
Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable wiper interval

Wiper lever in position **INT**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the wiping frequency.

Windscreen wiper with rain sensor



HI : fast
LO : slow
AUTO : automatic wiping with rain sensor
OFF : off

In **AUTO** position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor

Wiper lever in position **AUTO**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

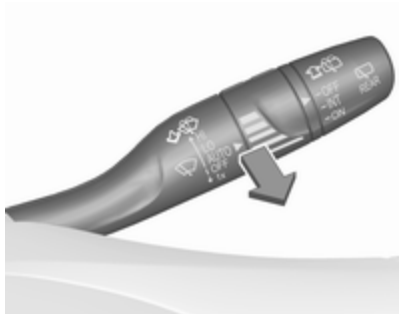
Rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated in the Vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Windscreen washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

Washer fluid ⇨ 234.

Rear window wiper and washer

Rear window wiper

Turn outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

OFF : off
INT : intermittent operation
ON : continuous operation

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Rear window washer

Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low.

Washer fluid ⇨ 234.

Outside temperature

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

Illustration shows an example.

If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

⚠ Warning

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

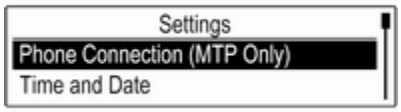
Clock

Date and time are shown in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Graphic-Info-Display

Press **MENU** to open the respective audio menu.



Select **Time and Date**.

Set Time

Select **Set Time** to enter the respective submenu.

Select **Auto Set** at the bottom of the screen. Activate either **On - RDS** or **Off (Manual)**.

If **Off (Manual)** is selected, adjust hours and minutes.

Repeatedly select **12-24 HR** at the bottom of the screen to choose a time mode.

If the 12-hour mode is selected, a third column for AM and PM selection is displayed. Select the desired option.

Set Date

Select **Set Date** to enter the respective submenu.

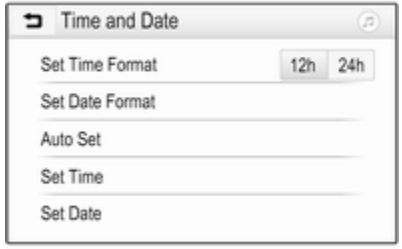
Select **Auto Set** at the bottom of the screen. Activate either **On - RDS** or **Off (Manual)**.

If **Off (Manual)** is selected, adjust the date settings.

7" Colour-Info-Display

Press ⌂ and then select **Settings**.

Select **Time and Date** to display the respective submenu.



Set Time Format

To select the desired time format, touch the screen buttons **12 h** or **24 h**.

Set Date Format

To select the desired date format, select **Set Date Format** and choose between the available options in the submenu.

Auto Set

To choose whether time and date are to be set automatically or manually, select **Auto Set**.

For time and date to be set automatically, select **On - RDS**.

For time and date to be set manually, select **Off - Manual**. If **Auto Set** is set to **Off - Manual**, the submenu items **Set Time** and **Set Date** become available.

Set time and date

To adjust the time and date settings, select **Set Time** or **Set Date**.

Touch **+** and **-** to adjust the settings.

8" Colour-Info-Display

Press ⌂ and then select the **Settings** icon.

Select **Time and Date**.

Set time

Select **Set Time** to enter the respective submenu.

Select **Auto Set** at the bottom of the screen. Activate either **On - RDS** or **Off - Manual**.

If **Off - Manual** is selected, adjust hours and minutes by touching ∧ or ∨.

Touch **12-24 Hr** on the right side of the screen to select a time mode.

If 12-hour mode is selected, a third column for AM and PM setting is displayed. Select the desired option.

Set date

Select **Set Date** to enter the respective submenu.

Note
If date information is automatically provided, this menu item is not available.

Select **Auto Set** at the bottom of the screen. Activate either **On - RDS** or **Off - Manual**.

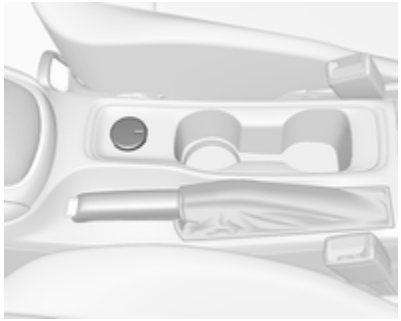
If **Off - Manual** is selected, adjust the date by touching ∧ or ∨.

Clock display

Select **Clock Display** to enter the respective submenu.

To turn off the digital clock display in the menus, select **Off**.

Power outlets



A 12 V power outlet is located in the centre console. With ignition off, this power outlet is deactivated.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 W.

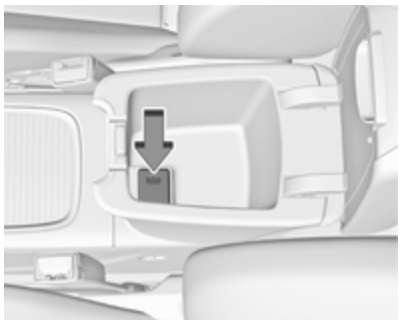
Electrical accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electrical charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

USB ports



Depending on the infotainment system, one or two USB ports for charging devices are located in between the front seats. These ports have also a data connection to the Infotainment system. For further information, see Infotainment manual.

USB charging port

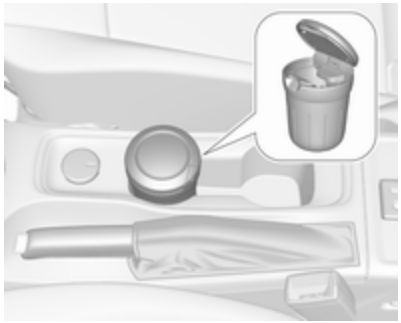
Two USB ports for charging devices only are located in the back of the centre console.

Each socket provides 2.1 Ampere at five Volts.

Note
The sockets must always be kept clean and dry.

Ashtrays

Caution
To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



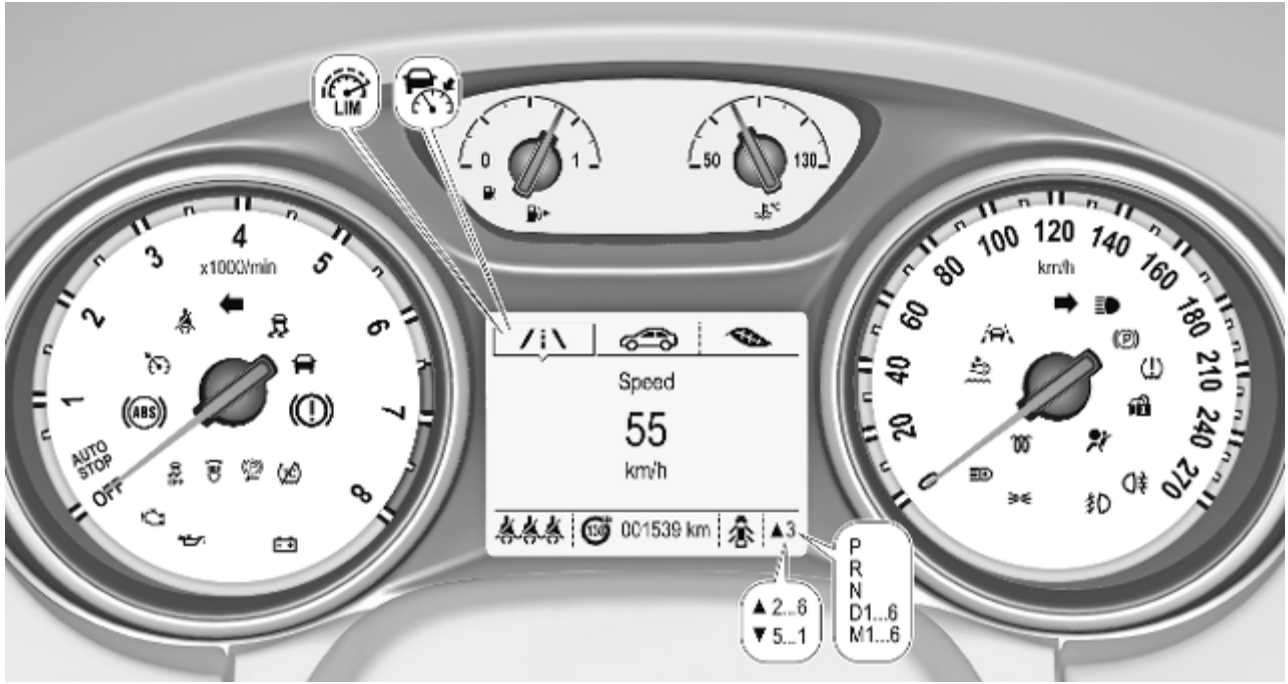
A portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

Warning lights, gauges and indicators

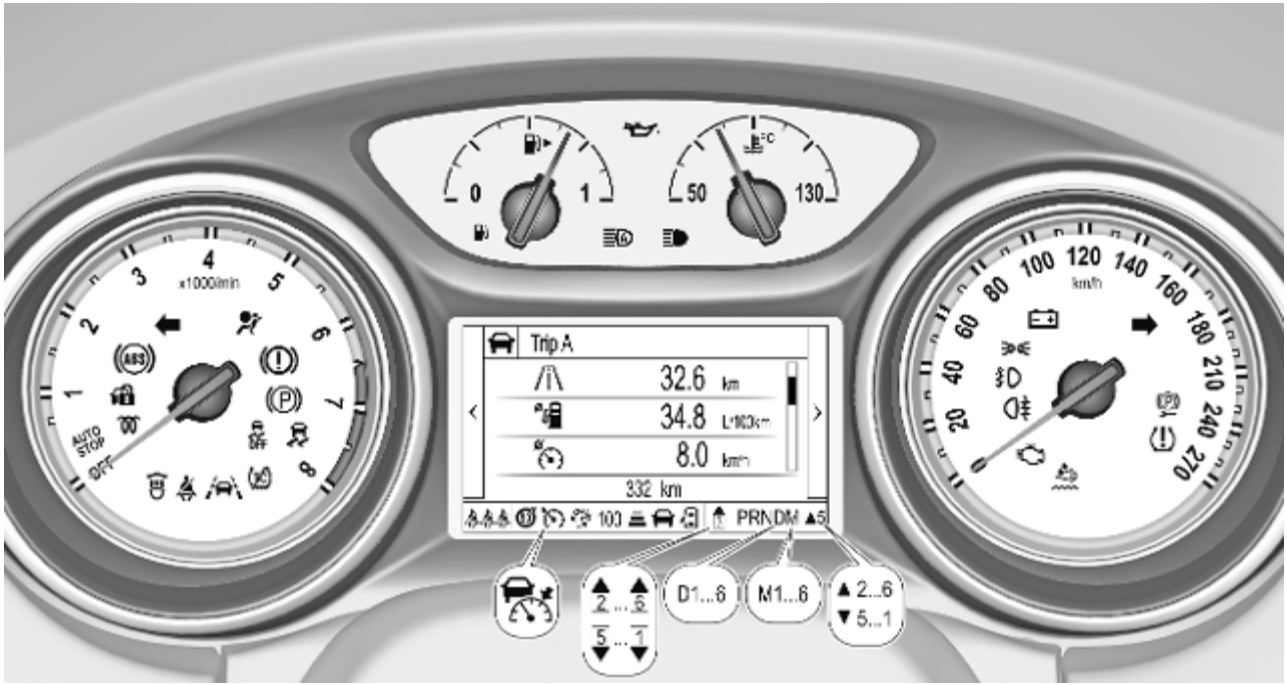
Instrument cluster

Depending on the version, two instrument clusters are available:

Midlevel instrument cluster



Uplevel instrument cluster



Overview

- Turn signal ⇨ 108
- Seat belt reminder ⇨ 108
- Airbag and belt tensioners ⇨ 109
- Airbag deactivation ⇨ 109
- Charging system ⇨ 110
- Malfunction indicator light ⇨ 110
- Brake and clutch system ⇨ 110
- Electric parking brake ⇨ 110
- Electric parking brake fault ⇨ 110
- Antilock brake system (ABS) ⇨ 111
- Gear shifting ⇨ 111
- Following distance ⇨ 111
- Lane keep assist ⇨ 111
- Electronic Stability Control off ⇨ 111
- Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ⇨ 111
- Traction Control system off ⇨ 112
- Preheating ⇨ 112
- AdBlue ⇨ 112
- Tyre pressure monitoring system ⇨ 112
- Engine oil pressure ⇨ 112
- Low fuel ⇨ 113
- Immobiliser ⇨ 113
- Exterior light ⇨ 113
- High beam ⇨ 113
- High beam assist ⇨ 113
- LED headlights ⇨ 113
- Fog light ⇨ 114
- Rear fog light ⇨ 114
- Cruise control ⇨ 114 / Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 114
- Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 114
- Vehicle detected ahead ⇨ 114
- Speed limiter ⇨ 114
- Traffic sign assistant ⇨ 114
- Door open ⇨ 115

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Odometer

The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

Trip odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed on the trip computer page.

Trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km and then restarts at 0.

Two trip odometer pages are selectable for different trips.

Midlevel instrument cluster

Select /i\ by pressing **Menu** on the turn signal lever. Turn adjuster wheel on turn signal lever and select /i\1 or /i\2. Each trip odometer page can be reset separately by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for a few seconds on the respective menu.

Uplevel instrument cluster

Select **Info** page on main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing ∨ on the steering wheel.

Each trip odometer can be reset separately when ignition is on: select respective page, press >. Confirm by pressing ✔.

Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

Caution
If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.

Fuel gauge

Displays the fuel level or gas content (CNG) in the tank depending on the current operation mode.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler flap is located.

For bi-fuel engines, the Driver Information Centre displays the fuel l evel for the fuel type which is currently not in operation. The fuel level for the fuel type which is currently in operation is shown in the fuel gauge.

Control indicator ⛽ illuminates if the fuel quantity is low.

For bi-fuel engines: In petrol mode, the control indicator ⛽ illuminates before the needle reaches the red area.

Refuel immediately if ⛽ flashes.

Never run the fuel tank dry.

Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

Fuel selector

Natural gas operation (CNG)

Press ⛽ to switch between petrol and natural gas operation.

The LED status shows the current operating mode.

LED off	:	petrol operation
LED illuminates	:	natural gas operation
LED flashes for approx. five seconds	:	fuel mode transition is selected but switching is not possible
LED flashes	:	fuel mode transition in process, flashing stops if transition is completed

Switching is not possible at high loads (e.g. powerful acceleration, driving at full throttle).

If the selector switch is operated several times within a short time, a switchover inhibitor is activated. The engine remains in the current operating mode. The inhibitor remains active until the ignition is switched off.

A slight loss of power and torque can be expected during petrol operation. You must therefore adapt your driving style, e.g. during overtaking manoeuvres and high vehicle loads (e.g. towing loads) accordingly.

The vehicle consumes petrol when starting the engine and even when in certain natural gas operating modes. The petrol consumption in natural gas operating mode can vary depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing). In case of a low fuel level, a corresponding message is displayed as a reminder to refuel.

Note
Always ensure that there is enough petrol in the tank.

Fuel for natural gas operation ⇨ 221.

Forced fuel mode transition

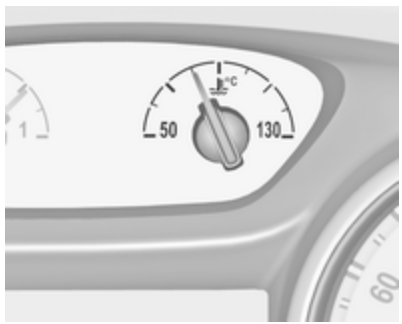
Natural gas tank is running low
As soon as the natural gas tank is empty, petrol operation is automatically engaged. Manually engaging natural gas operation mode is not possible until natural gas refuelling is detected.

Before the petrol fuel system runs empty, a warning message will be displayed and cannot be dismissed.

Petrol tank is running low while natural gas is available
If the remaining petrol level in the tank falls below a certain level, natural gas operation is automatically engaged provided there is a sufficient natural gas level in the tank. Manually engaging petrol operation mode is not possible.

Before both fuel systems run empty, a warning message will be displayed and cannot be dismissed.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

50	:	engine operating temperature not yet reached
central area	:	normal operating temperature
130	:	temperature too high

Caution

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

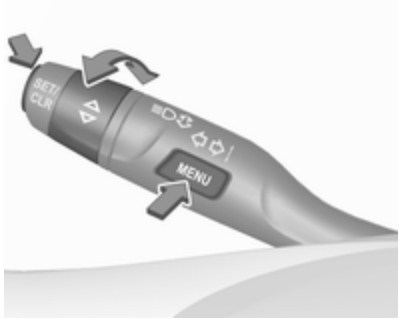
Service display

The engine oil life system informs when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

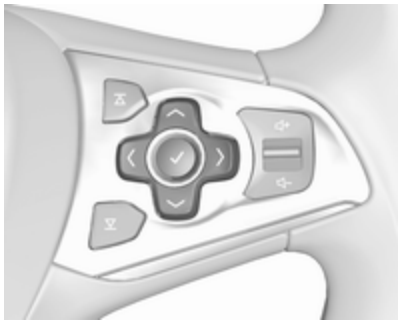
When the system has calculated that engine oil life has been diminished, **Change Engine Oil Soon** appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have engine oil and filter changed by a workshop within one week or 500 km, whichever occurs first.

This can be an additional engine oil and filter change or part of a regular service.

The remaining oil life duration menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.



On Midlevel display select the **Settings** Menu by pressing **MENU** on the turn signal lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to select the **Remaining Oil Life** page.



On Uplevel display select **Info** Menu by pressing < on steering wheel. Press ∨ to select **Remaining Oil Life** page.

Remaining oil life duration is indicated in percentage.

Reset

On Midlevel display press **SET/CLR** on turn signal lever for several seconds to reset. The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

On Uplevel display press > on steering wheel to open the subfolder. Select **Reset** and confirm by pressing ✔ for several seconds. The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow proper functionality. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Next service

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre, when maintenance of the vehicle is required. Have maintenance work carried out by a workshop within one week or 500 km, whichever occurs first.

Service information ⇨ 278.

Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

red : danger, important reminder
yellow : warning, information, fault
green : confirmation of activation
blue : confirmation of activation
white : confirmation of activation

See all control indicators on different instrument clusters ⇨ 100.

Turn lights

⇦⇨ illuminates or flashes green.

Illuminates briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

Flashes

A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: failure of a turn signal light or associated fuse, failure of turn signal light on trailer.

Bulb replacement ⇨ 237, Fuses ⇨ 247.

Turn signals ⇨ 141.

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt reminder on front seats

for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.

for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when seat is occupied.

Illuminates
After the ignition has been switched on until the seat belt has been fastened.

Flashes
After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt has been fastened.

Seat belt status on rear seats (vehicles with Midlevel display)

illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

Illuminates white
Seat belt is unfastened.

Illuminates grey
Seat belt has been fastened.

Flashes white or grey
Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Fastening the seat belt ⇨ 58.

Seat belt status on rear seats (vehicles with Uplevel display)

illuminates green or grey or flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

Illuminates grey
Seat belt is unfastened.

Illuminates green
Seat belt has been fastened.

Flashes yellow
Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Fastening the seat belt ⇨ 58.

Airbag and belt tensioners

illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners, airbag system ⇨ 57, ⇨ 59.

Airbag deactivation

illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is activated.

illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 64.

Charging system

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Malfunction indicator light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

The cleaning process of the exhaust filter is potentially not possible.

Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Flashes when the engine is running

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Brake and clutch system

illuminates red.

The brake and clutch fluid level is too low, when manual parking brake is not applied ⇨ 234.

⚠Warning

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates when the manual parking brake is applied and ignition is switched on ⇨ 179.

Electric parking brake

Ⓟ illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

Electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 179.

Flashes

Electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Depress the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake. If Ⓟ remains flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a workshop.

Electric parking brake fault

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance ⇨ 179.

Flashes

Electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

⚠ Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

(ABS) illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system ⇨ 178.

Gear shifting

▲ or ▼ with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated, when up- or downshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Following distance

indicates the following distance setting of the alert timing sensitivity for the forward collision alert using filled distance bars.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 195.

Lane keep assist

illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates yellow

The system approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

Flashes yellow

The system recognizes that the lane is departed significantly.

Lane keep assist ⇨ 216

Electronic Stability Control off

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control ⇨ 182, Traction Control system ⇨ 181.

Traction Control system off

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Preheating

illuminates yellow.

Preheating of Diesel engine is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low. Start the engine when control indicator extinguishes.

Exhaust filter

illuminates or flashes yellow.

The exhaust filter requires cleaning.

Continue driving until extinguishes. If possible, do not allow engine speed to drop below 2000 rpm.

Illuminates

The exhaust filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

Flashes

The maximum filling level of the filter is reached. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Exhaust filter ⇨ 167, Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

AdBlue

flashes yellow.

AdBlue level is low. Refill AdBlue soon to avoid prevention of the engine start.

AdBlue ⇨ 169.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Tyre pressure loss. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

Flashes

Fault in system or tyre without pressure sensor mounted (e.g. spare wheel). After 60 to 90 seconds the control indicator illuminates continuously. Consult a workshop.

Engine oil pressure

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates when the engine is running

Caution

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Depress clutch.
2. Select neutral gear.
3. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
4. Switch off ignition.

⚠ Warning

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

During an Autostop, the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Keep engine turned off and let the vehicle be towed to a workshop ⇨ 232.

Low fuel

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Level in fuel tank is too low.

Flashes

Fuel used up. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

Refuelling ⇨ 221.

Catalytic converter ⇨ 168.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system ⇨ 236.

Immobiliser

flashes yellow.

Fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

Exterior light

illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on ⇨ 135.

High beam

illuminates blue.

Illuminated when high beam is on or during headlight flash ⇨ 136.

High beam assist

illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated, see LED headlights ⇨ 137.

LED headlights

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

Fault in the system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Flashes

System is switched to symmetrical low beam.

Control indicator flashes for approx. four seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for symmetrical headlight ⇨ 137.

Front fog lights

illuminates green.

The front fog lights are on ⇨ 141.

Rear fog light

illuminates yellow.

The rear fog light is on ⇨ 142.

Cruise control

illuminates white or green.

Illuminates white

The system is on.

Illuminates green

Cruise control is active. Set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Cruise control ⇨ 184.

Adaptive cruise control

illuminates white or green.

illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

illuminates white

The system is on.

illuminates green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

When Adaptive cruise control is on or active, with the set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 187.

Vehicle detected ahead

illuminates green or yellow.

Illuminates green

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Illuminates yellow

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 187, Forward collision alert ⇨ 195.

Speed limiter

illuminates white or green.

Illuminates white

The system is on.

Illuminates green

Speed limiter is active. Set speed is indicated near symbol.

Speed limiter ⇨ 186.

Traffic sign assistant

displays detected traffic signs as control indicator.

Traffic sign assistant ⇨ 212.

Door open

illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

Displays

Driver Information Centre

The Driver Information Centre is located in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the version and the instrument cluster, the Driver Information Centre is available as Midlevel display or Uplevel display.

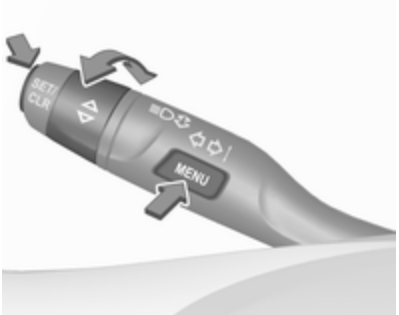
Driver Information Centre indicates depending on the equipment:

- overall and trip odometer
- vehicle information
- trip/fuel information
- driving economy information
- vehicle and warning messages
- audio and infotainment information
- phone information
- navigation information
- vehicle settings

Midlevel display

Selecting menus and functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.



Press **MENU** to switch between the main menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press **SET/CLR** to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre if required. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**. Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

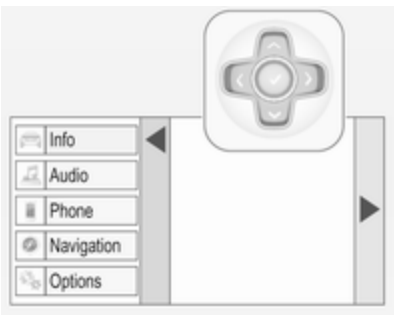
Main menu

Main menus are:

- Trip/fuel information, displayed by /i\, see description below.
- Vehicle information, displayed by 🚗, see description below.
- Eco information, displayed by 🍃, see description below.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

Uplevel display



Selecting menus and functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right side in the steering wheel.

- Press < to open main menu page.
- Select a main menu page with ∧ or ∨.
- Confirm a main menu page with ✔.

Once a main menu page is selected, press ∧ or ∨ to select subpages.

- Press > to open a next folder of the selected subpage.
- Press ∧ or ∨ to select functions or to set a numeric value, if required.
- Press ✔ to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages pop-up in the Driver Information Centre when required.

Confirm messages by pressing ✔.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Main menu

Main menus are:

- Trip/fuel information, displayed by **Info**, see description below.
- Audio information, displayed by **Audio**, see description below.
- Phone information, displayed by **Phone**, see description below.
- Navigation information, displayed by **Navigation**, see description below.
- Vehicle information, displayed by **Options**, see description below.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill and some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

Trip / fuel information menu, / i \ or Info

The following list contains all possible Info Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display, some functions are symbolised.

Turn the adjuster wheel or press ∧ or ∨ to select a page:

- Trip odometer 1/2 or A/B
- Average fuel consumption
- Average speed
- Digital speed
- Fuel range
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Remaining oil life
- Tyre pressure
- Traffic sign assistant
- Following distance
- Timer
- Outside temperature
- AdBlue level

On Midlevel display the pages Remaining Oil Life, Tyre Pressure, Traffic Sign Assistant and Following Distance are displayed in the Vehicle information menu, select 🚗.

Trip odometer 1/2 or A/B

Trip odometer displays the current distance since a certain reset.

Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

To reset on Midlevel display, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

To reset on Uplevel display, press > and confirm with ✔.

The information of trip odometer page 1/A and 2/B can be reset separately while the respective display is active.

Average Fuel Consumption

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

To reset on Midlevel display, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds, on Uplevel display, press > and confirm with ✔.

On vehicles with bi-fuel engines: Average consumption is indicated for the currently selected mode, CNG or petrol.

Average speed

Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.

To reset on Midlevel display, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds, on Uplevel display, press > and confirm with ✔.

Digital speed

Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

Fuel range

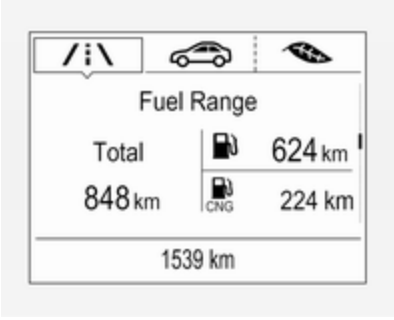
Range is calculated from current fuel level and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the level in the fuel tank is low, a message appears on the display and the control indicator ⛽ in the fuel gauge illuminates.

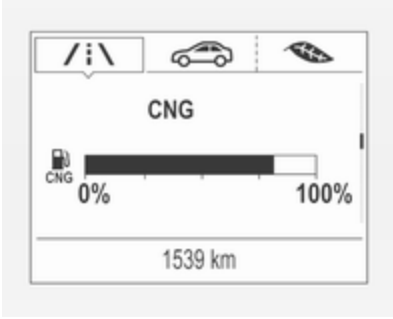
When the fuel tank must be refuelled immediately, a warning message appears and remains on the display. Additionally, control indicator ⛽ in the fuel gauge flashes ⇨ 113.

Fuel range, bi-fuel engine



Display of the approximate total fuel range and for each fuel tank (CNG and petrol). A low fuel level in either tank is indicated by **Low** in the respective section.

Fuel level, bi-fuel engine



For bi-fuel engines, the Driver Information Centre displays the fuel level for the fuel type which is currently not in operation.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption

Display of the instantaneous consumption.

On vehicles with bi-fuel engines: Instantaneous consumption is indicated for the currently selected mode, CNG or petrol.

Remaining Oil Life
Indicates an estimate of the oil's useful life. The number in percentage means the remainder of current oil life ⇨ 107.

Tyre Pressure
Checks tyre pressure of all wheels during driving ⇨ 257.

Traffic sign assistant
Displays the detected traffic signs for the current route section ⇨ 212.

Following Distance
Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle ⇨ 197. If Adaptive cruise control is active this page shows the following distance setting instead.

Timer
To start and stop, press ✔. To reset, press > and confirm reset.

Outside temperature
Display of current outside temperature.

AdBlue
Displays the AdBlue level.

Eco information menu,

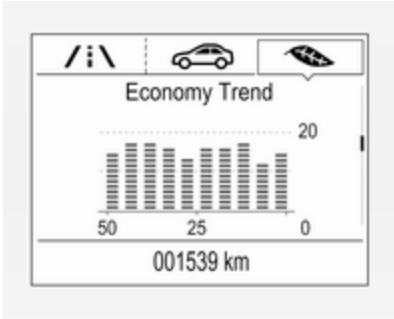
- Top consumers
- Economy trend
- Eco index

On Uplevel display the pages Top Consumers, Economy Trend and Eco index, are displayed in the Trip/fuel information menu, select **Info**.

Top Consumers
List of top comfort consumers currently switched on is displayed in descending order. Fuel saving potential is indicated.

During sporadic driving conditions, the engine will activate the heated rear window automatically to increase the engine load. In this event, the heated rear window is indicated as one of the top consumers, without activation by the driver.

Economy Trend



Displays the average consumption development over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

Economy index
The average fuel consumption is indicated on an economic scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the indicator within the green area. The more the indicator moves towards red, the higher is the

fuel consumption. Simultaneously the average consumption value is indicated.

Depending on vehicle version, the Eco Index shows values referring to trip odometer page A/1 or the current driving cycle. In the last case, the indicator is reset when ignition is switched on the next time.

Audio menu

Audio menu enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source.

See Infotainment manual.

Phone menu

Phone menu enables managing and performing of phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating handsfree phoning.

See Infotainment manual.

Navigation menu

Navigation menu enables route guidance.

See Infotainment manual.

Vehicle information menu, or Options

The following list contains all possible Options Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

Turn the adjuster wheel or press ∧ or ∨ to select a page and follow the instructions given in the submenus:

- Units
- Info pages
- Speed warning
- Tyre loading
- Software information

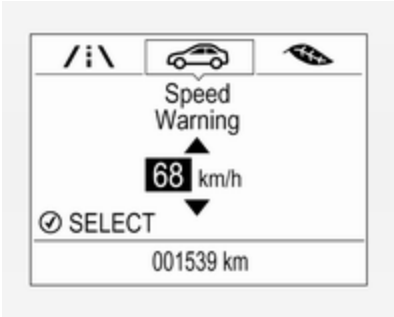
Units

Press **SET/CLR** or > while units is displayed. Select imperial or metric units by turning adjuster wheel or pressing ∨. Confirm by pressing **SET/CLR** or ✔.

Info pages

Press > while Info pages is displayed. A list of all items in the Info Menu is displayed. Select the functions to be displayed in the Info page by pressing ✔. Selected pages have a ✔ in a checkbox. Non-viewable functions have a blank checkbox. See **Info Menu** above.

Speed warning



The speed warning function alerts the driver when a set speed is exceeded.

To set the speed warning, press **SET/CLR** or > while the page is displayed. Turn the adjuster wheel or press ∧ or ∨ to select and adjust the value. Press **SET/CLR** or ✔ to set the speed. Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing **SET/CLR** or ✔ while viewing this

page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

Tyre Load

The tyre pressure category according to the actual tyre inflation pressure can be selected ⇨ 257.

Software information

Displays the open source software information.

Info Display

The Info-Display is located in the instrument panel near the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle configuration the vehicle has a

- **Graphic-Info-Display**

  or

- **7" Colour-Info-Display** with touchscreen functionality

  or

- **8" Colour-Info-Display** with touchscreen functionality

The vehicle has a **7" Colour-Info-Display** with touchscreen functionality.

The vehicle has a **8" Colour-Info-Display** with touchscreen functionality.

The Info displays can indicate:

- time ⇨ 96
- outside temperature ⇨ 96
- date ⇨ 96
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment manual
- indication of rear view camera ⇨ 210
- indication of parking assist instructions ⇨ 201
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment manual
- system messages
- settings for vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125

Graphic-Info-Display

Press ⏻ to switch on the display.

Press **MENU** to select main menu page.

Turn **MENU** to select a menu page.

Press **MENU** to confirm a selection.

Press **BACK** to exit a menu without changing a setting.

7" Colour-Info-Display

Selecting menus and settings

Menus and settings are accessed via the display.

Press ⏻ to switch on the display.

Press ⌂ to display the homepage.

Touch required menu display icon with the finger.

Touch a respective icon to confirm a selection.

Touch ↩ to return to the next higher menu level.

Press ⌂ to return to the homepage.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

8" Colour-Info-Display

Selecting menus and settings

There are three options to operate the display:

- via buttons below the display
- by touching the touchscreen with the finger
- via speech recognition

Button operation

Press ⏻ to switch on the display.

Press ⌂ to display the homepage.

Turn **MENU** to select a menu display icon or a function or to scroll a submenu list.

Press **MENU** to confirm a selection.

Press **BACK** to exit a menu without changing a setting.

Press ⌂ to return to the homepage.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

Touchscreen operation

Display must be switched on by pressing ⏻. Press ⌂ to select homepage.

Touch required menu display icon or a function with the finger.

Scroll a longer submenu list with the finger up or down.

Confirm a required function or selection by touching.

Touch ↩ on the display to exit a menu without changing a setting.

Press ⌂ to return to the homepage.

For further information, see Infotainment manual.

Speech recognition

Description see Infotainment manual.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Valet mode

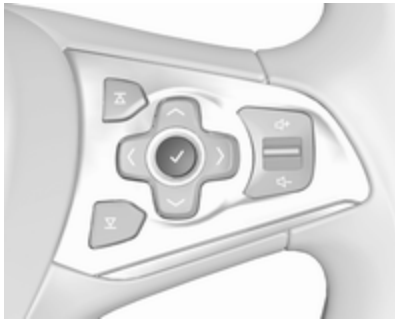
Some functions of the Driver Information Centre and the Info-Display can be limited for some drivers. The load compartment is being locked and cannot be unlocked.

For more information, see Infotainment manual.

Vehicle messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning chime.

On Midlevel display press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever to confirm a message.



On Uplevel display press ✔ on the steering wheel to confirm a message.

Vehicle and service messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Colour-Info-Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the Colour-Info-Display. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

Warning chimes

If several warnings appear at the same time, only one warning chime will sound.

When starting the engine or whilst driving

The warning chime regarding not fastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

- If seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
- If adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the electronic key is not in the passenger compartment.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level.
- If safety function of the power tailgate detects obstacles in the moving area.

When the vehicle is parked and/or the driver's door is opened

- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an autostart is not fulfilled.

Battery voltage

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electrical consumers which are not required for a safe drive, e.g. seat heating, heated rear window or other main consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop.

If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Vehicle personalisation

The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info-Display.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key. Memorised settings ⇨ 25.

Depending on vehicle equipment and country-specific regulations some of the functions described below may not be available.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

Personal settings

Graphic-Info-Display

Press **MENU** to open the respective menu.

Select **Settings**, scroll through the list and select **Vehicle Settings**

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

Vehicle Settings

- **Climate and Air Quality**

  Auto Fan Max Speed: Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

  Auto Heated Seats: Automatically activates the seat heating.

  Auto Demist: Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.

  Auto Rear Demist: Automatically activates heated rear window.

- **Park Assist / Collision Detection**

  Forward Collision Alert: Activates or deactivates forward collision alert.

  Collision Preparation: Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated completely.

  Park Assist: Activates or deactivates the parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer hitch.

  Go Notifier: Activates or deactivates the reminder to drive off when the adaptive cruise control holds the vehicle at standstill.

  Side Blind Zone Alert: Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

- **Comfort Settings**

  Auto Memory Recall: Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.

  Easy Exit Driver Seat: Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.

  Chime Volume: Changes the volume of warning chimes.

  Personalisation by Driver: Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

  Rain Sense Wipers: Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

  Rear Auto Wipe in Reverse: Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Exterior Ambient Lighting**

  Exterior lighting by unlocking: Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

  Duration upon exit of vehicle: Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

  Left or Right Hand Traffic: Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.

  Adaptive Forward Lighting: Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**

  Stop door lock if door open: Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.

  Auto Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on ignition.

  Delayed Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- **Remote Lock, Unlock, and Start**

  Remote Unlock Feedback: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

  Remote Lock Feedback: Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.

  Remote Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

  Auto Relock Doors: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

  Remote Window Operation: Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with remote control.

  Passive Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

  Passive Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alarm: Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.

- **Restore Factory Settings**:

  Resets all settings to the default settings.

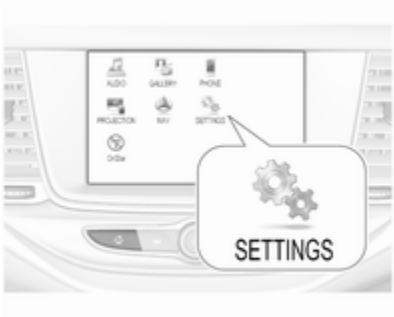
- **Valet Mode**:

  See Infotainment manual.

Personal settings

7" Colour-Info-Display

Press ⌂, select **Settings** and then **Vehicle** on the touch-screen.



In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

Vehicle

- **Climate & Air Quality**

  Auto Fan Max Speed: Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

  Auto Heated Seats: Automatically activates the seat heating.

  Auto Defog: Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.

  Auto Rear Defog: Automatically activates heated rear window.

- **Collision / Detection Systems**

  Rear View Camera Guidelines: Activates or deactivates the rear view camera guidelines on the Info Display.

  Forward Collision Alert : Activates or deactivates forward collision alert.

  Auto Collision Preparation: Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated completely.

  Forward Collision System: Changes the settings of forward collision alert.

  Park Assist: Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.

  Go Notifier: Activates or deactivates the reminder to drive off when the adaptive cruise control holds the vehicle at standstill.

  Side Blind Zone Alert: Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

- **Comfort and Convenience**

  Auto Memory Recall : Changes the settings to the recall of

memorised settings for power seat adjustment.

Easy Exit Driver Seat: Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.

Chime Volume: Changes the volume of warning chimes.

Personalization By Driver: Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

Rain Sense Wipers: Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear: Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Lighting**

  Vehicle Locator Lights: Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

  Exit Lighting: Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

  Left or Right Hand Traffic : Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.

  Adaptive Forward Lighting : Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**

  Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out: Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.

  Auto Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on ignition.

  Delayed Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- **Remote Lock, Unlock, Start**

  Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

  Remote Lock Feedback: Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.

  Remote Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

  Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

  Remote Window Operation: Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with remote control.

  Passive Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

  Passive Door Lock : Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

  Remote Left in Vehicle Alert: Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.

Personal settings

8" Colour-Info-Display

Press ⌂ then select the **SETTINGS** icon.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

Vehicle

- **Climate and Air Quality**

  Auto Fan Speed: Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

  Auto Heated Seats: Automatically activates the seat heating.

  Auto Demist: Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.

  Auto Rear Demist: Automatically activates heated rear window.

- **Collision / Detection Systems**

  Forward Collision Alert: Activates or deactivates forward collision alert.

  Auto Collision Preparation: Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated completely.

  Park Assist: Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.

  Go Notifier: Activates or deactivates the reminder function of the adaptive cruise control.

  Side Blind Zone Alert: Activates or deactivates side blind zone alert.

- **Comfort and Convenience**

  Auto Memory Recall: Changes the settings to the recall of memorised settings for power seat adjustment.

  Easy Exit Driver Seat: Activates or deactivates easy exit function of the power seat.

  Chime Volume: Changes the volume of warning chimes.

  Personalisation by Driver: Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

  Rainsense Wipers: Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with rain sensor.

  Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear: Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Lighting**

  Vehicle Locator Lights: Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

  Exit Lighting: Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

  Left or Right Hand Traffic: Changes between lighting for left or right-hand traffic.

  Adaptive Forward Lighting: Changes the settings of the functions of the LED headlights.

- **Power Door Locks**

  Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout: Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.

  Auto Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on ignition.

  Delayed Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function. This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until all doors are closed.

- **Remote Lock, Unlock, Start**

  Remote Unlock Light Feedback: Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

  Remote Lock Feedback: Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.

  Remote Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

  Relock Remote Unlocked Doors: Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

  Remote Window Operation: Activates or deactivates the operation of power windows with remote control.

  Passive Door Unlock: Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

  Passive Door Lock: Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and an electronic key has been removed from the vehicle.

  Remote Left in Vehicle Alert: Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the electronic key remains in the vehicle.

Telematics service

OnStar

OnStar is a personal connectivity and service assistant with integrated Wi-Fi hotspot. The OnStar service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Note
OnStar is not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

Note
In order to be available and operational, OnStar needs a valid OnStar subscription, functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link.

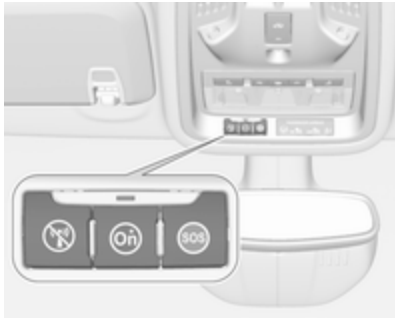
To activate the OnStar services and set up an account, press ⓞⓝ and speak with an advisor.

Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, the following services are available:

- Emergency services and support in the case of a vehicle breakdown
- Wi-Fi hotspot
- Smartphone application
- Remote control, e.g. location of the vehicle, activation of horn and lights, control of central locking system
- Stolen vehicle assistance
- Vehicle diagnostics
- Destination download

Note
The OnStar module of the vehicle is deactivated after ten days without an ignition cycle. Functions requiring a data connection will be available again after switching on the ignition.

OnStar buttons



Privacy button
Press and hold ⊘ until a message is heard to activate or deactivate the transmission of the vehicle location.

Press ⊘ to answer a call or to end a call to an advisor.

Press ⊘ to access the Wi-Fi settings.

Service button
Press ⓞⓝ to establish a connection to an advisor.

SOS button

Press SOS to establish a priority emergency connection to a specially trained emergency advisor.

Status LED

Green: The system is ready with activated transmission of the vehicle location.

Green flashing: The system is on a call.

Red: A problem arose.

Off: The system is ready with deactivated transmission of the vehicle location or the system is in standby mode.

Red / green flashing for a short period of time: The transmission of the vehicle location has been deactivated.

OnStar services

General services

If you need any information e.g. opening hours, points of interest and destinations or if you need any support e.g. in the case of a vehicle breakdown, a flat tyre and empty fuel tank, press OnStar to establish a connection to an advisor.

Emergency services

In the case of an emergency situation, press SOS and talk to an advisor. The advisor then contacts emergency or assistance service providers and directs them to your vehicle.

In the case of an accident with activation of airbags or belt tensioners, an automatic emergency call is established. The advisor is immediately connected to your vehicle to see whether help is needed.

Wi-Fi hotspot

The Wi-Fi hotspot of the vehicle provides internet connectivity with a maximum speed of 4G/LTE.

Note
The Wi-Fi hotspot functionality is not available for all markets.

Note
Some mobile devices connect to Wi-Fi hotspots automatically and use mobile data capacity in the background, even if they are not in use. This includes automatic updates, downloads, as well as programme or app synchronisation traffic. The data volume purchased via OnStar might be consumed rapidly. Turn off automatic synchronisations in the settings of your device.

Up to seven devices may be connected.

To connect a mobile device with the Wi-Fi hotspot:

1. Press Wi-Fi and then select Wi-Fi settings on the Info-Display. The settings displayed include the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password and connection type.
2. Start a Wi-Fi network search on your mobile device.
3. Select your vehicle hotspot (SSID) when listed.
4. When prompted, enter the password on your mobile device.

Note
To change the SSID or password, press ⓞ and talk to an advisor or log in to your account.

To switch off the Wi-Fi hotspot functionality, press ⓞ to call an advisor.

Smartphone app
With the myOpel smartphone app, some vehicle functions can be operated remotely.

The following functions are available:

- Lock or unlock vehicle.
- Honk horn or flash lights.
- Check fuel level, engine oil life and tyre pressure (only with tyre pressure monitoring system).
- Send navigation destination to the vehicle, if equipped with a built-in navigation system.
- Locate vehicle on a map.
- Manage Wi-Fi settings.

To operate these functions, download the app from App Store® or Google Play™ Store.

Remote control
If desired, use any phone to call an advisor, who can remotely operate specific vehicle functions. Find the respective OnStar phone number on our country-specific website.

The following functions are available:

- Lock or unlock vehicle.
- Provide information on the vehicle location.
- Honk horn or flash lights.

Stolen vehicle assistance
If the vehicle is stolen, report the theft to the authorities and request OnStar stolen vehicle assistance. Use any phone to call an advisor. Find the respective OnStar phone number on our country-specific website.

OnStar can provide support in locating and recovering the vehicle.

Theft alert
When the anti-theft alarm system is triggered, a notification is sent to OnStar. You are then informed about this event by text message or email.

Restart prevention
By sending remote signals, OnStar can prevent the vehicle from restarting once it has been turned off.

On-demand diagnostics
At any time e.g. if the vehicle displays a vehicle message, press ⓞ to contact an advisor and ask to complete a real-time diagnostic check to directly determine the issue. Depending on the results, the advisor will provide further support.

Diagnostic report
The vehicle automatically transmits diagnostic data to OnStar which sends a monthly email report to you and your preferred workshop.

Note
The workshop notification function can be disabled in your account.

The report contains the status of key operating systems of the vehicle like engine, transmission, airbags, ABS, and other major systems. It also provides information on possible

maintenance items and tyre pressure (only with tyre pressure monitoring system).

To look at the information in greater detail, select the link within the email and log in to your account.

Destination download

A desired destination can be directly downloaded to the navigation system.

Press ⓞ to call an advisor and describe the destination or point of interest.

The advisor can look up any address or point of interest and directly send the destination to the built-in navigation system.

OnStar settings

OnStar PIN

To have full access to all OnStar services, a four-digit PIN is required. The PIN has to be personalised when first talking to an advisor.

To change the PIN, press ⓞ to call an advisor.

Account data

An OnStar subscriber has an account where all the data is stored. To request a change of the account information, press ⓞ and talk to an advisor or log in to your account.

If the OnStar service is used on another vehicle, press ⓞ and request that the account be transferred to the new vehicle.

Note
In any case, if the vehicle is disposed of, sold or otherwise transferred, immediately inform OnStar about the changes and terminate the OnStar service on this vehicle.

Vehicle location

The vehicle location is transmitted to OnStar when service is requested or triggered. A message on the Info-Display informs about this transmission.

To activate or deactivate the transmission of the vehicle location, press and hold ⓝ until an audio message is heard.

The deactivation is indicated by the status light flashing red and green for a short period of time and each time the vehicle is started.

Note
If the transmission of the vehicle location is deactivated, some services are no longer available.

Note
The vehicle location always remains accessible to OnStar in the case of an emergency.

Find the privacy policy in your account.

Software updates

OnStar may remotely carry out software updates without further notice or consent. These updates are to enhance or maintain safety and security or the operation of the vehicle.

These updates may concern privacy issues. Find the privacy policy in your account.

Lighting

Exterior lighting **135**
Light switch 135
Automatic light control 136
High beam 136
Headlight flash 136
Headlight range adjustment 136
Headlights when driving abroad 137
Daytime running lights 137
LED headlights 137
Hazard warning flashers 140
Turn lights 141
Front fog lights 141
Rear fog light 142
Parking lights 142
Reversing lights 142
Misted light covers 142
Interior lighting **143**
Instrument panel illumination control 143
Interior lights 143
Reading lights 143
Sunvisor lights 144
Lighting features **144**
Centre console lighting 144
Entry lighting 144
Exit lighting 144
Battery discharge protection 145

Exterior lighting

Light switch

Turn light switch:

AUTO : automatic light control switches automatically between daytime running light and headlight

⇶ : sidelights

≣D : headlights

When switching on the ignition, automatic light control is active.

Control indicator ⇶ ⇨ 113.

Tail lights

Tail lights are illuminated together with low/high beam and sidelights.

Automatic light control

When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically depending on the external lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system.

Daytime running light ⇨ 137.

Automatic headlight activation

During poor lighting conditions headlights are switched on.

Additionally, headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

LED headlights ⇨ 137

Tunnel detection

When a tunnel is entered headlights are switched on immediately.

High beam

Push lever to switch from low to high beam.

Pull lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam assist ⇨ 137.

Headlight flash

To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.

Pulling lever deactivates high beam.

LED headlights ⇨ 137.

Headlight range adjustment

Manual headlight range adjustment

To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel to required position.

0 : front seats occupied
1 : all seats occupied
2 : all seats occupied and load compartment laden
3 : driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

Dynamic automatic headlight levelling ⇨ 137.

Headlights when driving abroad

The asymmetrical headlight beam extends visibility at the edge of the road at the passenger side.

However, when driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, adjust the headlights to prevent dazzling of oncoming traffic.

Vehicles with halogen headlight system

The headlights do not have to be adjusted.

Vehicles with LED headlight

Headlights can be set for driving on the opposite side of the road in the vehicle personalisation menu via the Info-Display.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle**.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Every time the ignition is switched on, flashes for approx. four seconds as a reminder.

To deactivate, use the same procedure as described above. will not flash when function is deactivated.

Control indicator ⇨ 113.

Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights increases visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically during daytime when engine is running.

The system switches between daytime running lights and headlights automatically, depending on the lighting conditions. Automatic light control ⇨ 136.

LED headlights

LED headlight system contains a variety of particular LEDs in each headlight which enables the control of different lighting programs.

Light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the lighting conditions, road type and driving situation. The vehicle adapts the headlights automatically to the situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.

Some functions of the LED headlights can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu. Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

High beam assist can not be deactivated.

The following lighting functions are available with light switch in position **AUTO** or ≡D.

Town light

Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 55 km/h and in situations with exterior ambient light. The light is wide and symmetrical. A special beam pattern is designed to avoid glare for other road users.

Country light

Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 55 km/h when driving in rural areas. The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is improved. Oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

Curve light

Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally triggered to improve lighting in curves. This function is activated at speeds from 40 km/h to 70 km/h and reacts to steering angle.

Corner light

When turning off, depending on the steering angle and the turn signal light, particular LEDs are triggered which illuminate the direction of travel. It is activated up to a speed of 40 km/h.

Reverse parking function

To assist driver's orientation when parking, both corner lights and reversing light illuminate when headlights are on and reverse gear is engaged. They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 7 km/h in a forward gear.

High beam assist

This feature allows the high beam to function as main driving light at night.

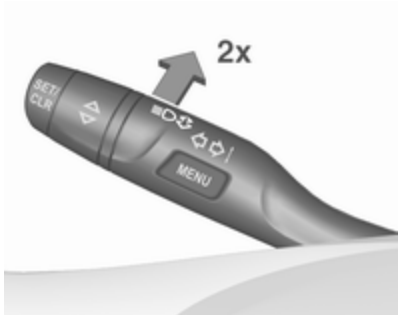
The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Each LED on right or left side can be triggered or faded out particulary according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without glaring other road users. Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding

conditions. The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

High beam assist includes a special motorway mode. When driving faster than 115 km/h on motorways, the light beam becomes smaller to avoid glaring of oncoming traffic. When following vehicles ahead or passing, mirror glaring for these vehicles is reduced.

Activation

Indicator lever with or without MENU button



Activate high beam assist by pushing the indicator lever twice. High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 50 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

Indicator lever with ≡D button

Activate high beam assist by pressing ≡D once. High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 50 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green control indicator ≡D illuminates continuously when the high beam assist is activated, the blue one ≡D illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator ≡D ⇨ 113 , ≡D ⇨ 113 .

Pressing indicator lever once switches on manual high beam without high beam assist.

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- Reverse parking function is active.
- Front or rear fog lights are switched on.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

Indicator lever with or without MENU button
If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, push indicator lever twice to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

Indicator lever with button
If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, press once or pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, press once to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

Headlight flash in conjunction with high beam assist
Headlight flash by pulling indicator lever once will not deactivate high beam assist when high beam is off.

Headlight flash by pulling indicator lever once deactivates high beam assist when high beam is on.

Dynamic automatic headlight levelling

To prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled, headlight levelling is automatically adjusted based on inclination information measured by front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

Headlights when driving abroad

⇨ 137.

Fault in LED headlight system

When the system detects a failure in the LED headlight system, it selects a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

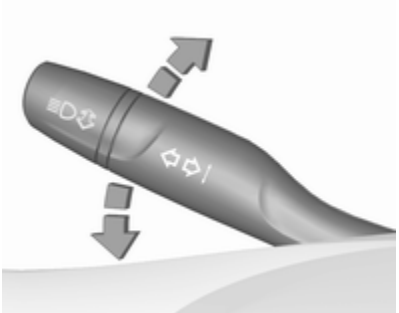
Hazard warning flashers

Operated by pressing .

The illustrations show different versions.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

Turn lights



lever up : right turn signal
lever down : left turn signal

A resistance point can be felt when moving the lever.

Constant flashing is activated when the lever is being moved beyond the resistance point. It is deactivated when the steering wheel is moved in the opposite direction or lever is manually moved back to its neutral position.

Activate temporary flashing by holding the lever just before the resistance point. Turning lights will flash until lever is being released.

To activate three flashes, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point.

With a trailer connected, turn signal flashes six times and tone frequency changes when pressing the lever until resistance is felt and then releasing.

Front fog lights

Operated by pressing ⧧D.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

Rear fog light

Operated by pressing ⌀.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position ≡⌀: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing a trailer or a plug is connected with the socket, e. g. when a bicycle carrier is used.

Parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move turn signal lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn signal control indicator.

Reversing lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.

Interior lighting

Instrument panel illumination control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted in position **AUTO** when the light sensor detects night conditions, or in position ≋ or ≡D.

- instrument panel illumination
- Info-Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn thumb wheel and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.

Note
In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front courtesy light

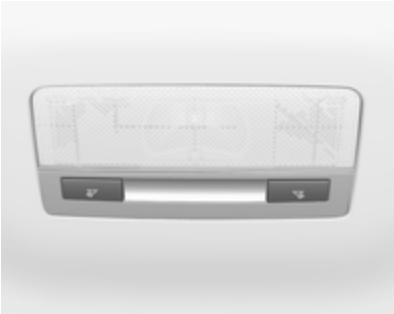
: automatic switching on and off
press : on
press : off

Rear courtesy lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

Reading lights

Operated by pressing and in the courtesy lights.



Sunvisor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting features

Centre console lighting

Spotlight incorporated in the interior lighting comes on when headlights are switched on.

Entry lighting

Welcome lighting

The following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- tail lights
- number plate lights
- instrument panel light
- interior lights

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition is switched on. Starting off ⇨ 17.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ⇨ 25.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- illumination of some switches
- Driver Information Centre
- door pocket lights

Exit lighting

The following lights switch on if the key is removed from the ignition switch:

- interior lights
- instrument panel light

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

Path lighting

Headlights, tail lights and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Activating

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Remove the ignition key.
3. Open the driver's door.
4. Pull the turn signal lever.
5. Close the driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the lights switch off after two minutes.

Exit lighting is switched off immediately if the turn signal lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle personalisation.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➡ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ⇨ 25.

Battery discharge protection

Vehicle battery state of charge function

The function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via a generator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- auxiliary heater
- heated rear window and mirrors
- heated seats
- fan

In the second stage, a message which confirms the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Switching off electric lights

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

Climate control

Climate control systems **146**
Heating and ventilation system 146
Air conditioning system 147
Electronic climate control system 149
Auxiliary heater 154
Air vents **154**
Adjustable air vents 154
Fixed air vents 154
Maintenance **155**
Air intake 155
Pollen filter 155
Air conditioning regular operation 155
Service 155

Climate control systems

Heating and ventilation system

Controls for:

- temperature
- air distribution, and
- fan speed
- demisting and defrosting

Heated rear window 44.

Heated exterior mirrors 41.

Heated seats 55.

Heated steering wheel 93.

Temperature

red : warm
blue : cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Air distribution

: to windscreen and front door windows
: to head area via adjustable air vents
: to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Fan speed

Adjust the air flow by switching the fan to the desired speed.

Demisting and defrosting

- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Air conditioning system

Controls for:

- temperature
- air distribution , and
- fan speed
- demisting and defrosting

A/C : cooling
: air recirculation
: heated rear window

Heated rear window ⇨ 44.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 41.

Heated seats ⇨ 55.

Ventilated seats ⇨ 55.

Heated steering wheel ⇨ 93.

Cooling A/C

Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops. Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Air recirculation system

Press to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Maximum cooling

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Switch on cooling **A/C**.
- Air circulation system on.
- Press air distribution switch .
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Press : the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Note
If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again.

If is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.

If is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Electronic climate control system

The dual zone climate control allows different temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.

In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Controls for:

- temperature on driver side
- air distribution
- fan speed
- temperature on front passenger side
- system on or off **ON/OFF**
- cooling **A/C**
- automatic mode **AUTO**
- manual air recirculation
- demisting and defrosting
- dual zone temperature synchronisation **SYNC**

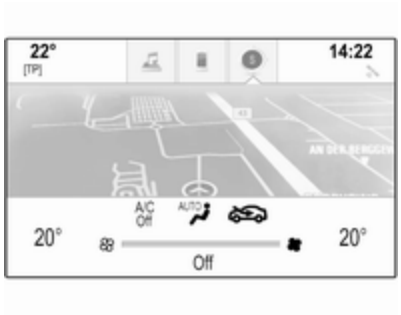
Heated rear window ⇨ 44.

Heated exterior mirrors ⇨ 41.

Heated seats ⇨ 55.

Ventilated seats ⇨ 55.

Heated steering wheel ⇨ 93.



Each change of settings is shown in the Info-Display for a few seconds.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Automatic mode AUTO

Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Press **A/C** to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary knob. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the Settings menu.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Temperature preselection

Set temperatures to the desired value. The knob on the passenger side changes the temperature for the passenger side.The knob on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side or for both sides depending on activation of synchronisation **SYNC**.

The selected temperature is indicated in the display of the knob.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling **A/C** is switched on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

Note
If **A/C** is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Dual zone temperature synchronisation SYNC

Press **SYNC** to link passenger side temperature setting to the driver side. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

When passenger side settings will be adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and the LED extinguishes.

Demisting and defrosting the windows

- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- To return to previous mode: press , to return to automatic mode: press **AUTO**.

Settings of automatic rear window heating can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Note
If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again.

If is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.

If is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

System on or off ON/OFF

Cooling, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing **ON/OFF**. When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button **ON/OFF** is off.

Activation by pressing **ON/OFF**, **A/C** or **AUTO**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Manual settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and rotary knobs as described below. Changing a setting will deactivate the automatic mode.

Fan speed

Press left button to decrease or right button to increase fan speed. The fan speed is indicated by the number of LEDs in the button.

Pressing the left button for longer: fan and cooling are switched off.

Pressing the right button for longer: the fan runs at maximum speed.

To return to automatic mode: Press **AUTO**.

Air distribution

Press the appropriate button for the desired adjustment. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- : to windscreen and front door windows (air conditioning is activated in the background to help preventing windows from fogging)
- : to head area via adjustable air vents
- : to foot well and windscreen

All combinations are possible.

Return to automatic air distribution: press **AUTO**.

Cooling A/C

Press **A/C** to switch on cooling. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press **A/C** again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop. Exception: defrost system is activated and outside temperature above 0 °C requests a restart.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

The display will indicate **A/C ON** when cooling is activated or **A/C OFF** when the cooling is deactivated.

Manual air recirculation

Press to activate the air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press again to deactivate recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

Automatic air recirculation

An air humidity sensor switches automatically to external air if internal air humidity is too high.

Basic settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Auxiliary heater

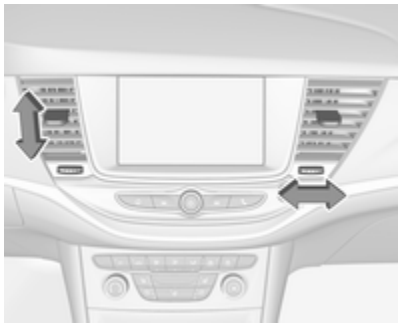
Air heater

Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

Air vents

Adjustable air vents

At least one air vent must be open while cooling is on.



To open the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the bigger ▮ symbol. Adjust the air amount at the vent outlet by turning the adjuster wheel.

Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the smaller ▮ symbol.

⚠Warning

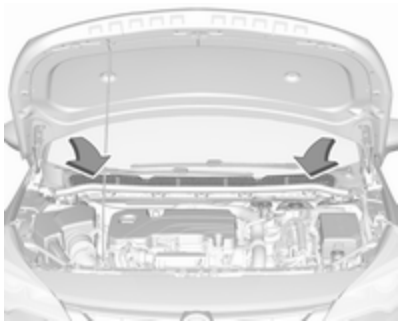
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.

Maintenance

Air intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Pollen filter

The pollen filter cleans dust, soot, pollen and spores from the air entering the vehicle through the air intake.

Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check

Driving and operating

Driving hints **157**
Control of the vehicle 157
Steering 157
Starting and operating **157**
New vehicle running-in 157
Ignition switch positions 157
Power button 158
Retained power off 160
Starting the engine 160
Overrun cut-off 162
Stop-start system 162
Parking 165
Engine exhaust **167**
Exhaust filter 167
Catalytic converter 168
AdBlue 169
Automatic transmission **171**
Transmission display 171
Selector lever 172
Manual mode 173
Electronic driving programmes 173
Fault 173
Interruption of power supply 174
Manual transmission **174**
Manual transmission automa-ted **175**
Transmission display 175
Selector lever 176
Manual mode 177
Electronic driving programmes 177
Fault 177
Brakes **178**
Antilock brake system 178
Parking brake 179
Brake assist 181
Hill start assist 181
Ride control systems **181**
Traction Control system 181
Electronic Stability Control 182
Sport mode 183
Driver assistance systems **184**
Cruise control 184
Speed limiter 186
Adaptive cruise control 187
Forward collision alert 195
Following distance indication ... 197
Active emergency braking 198
Parking assist 201
Side blind spot alert 209
Rear view camera 210
Traffic sign assistant 212
Lane keep assist 216
Fuel **219**
Fuel for petrol engines 219
Fuel for diesel engines 220
Fuel for natural gas operation . 221
Refuelling 221
Trailer hitch **224**
General information 224
Driving characteristics and towing tips 224
Trailer towing 224
Towing equipment 225
Trailer stability assist 228

Driving hints

Control of the vehicle

Never coast with engine not running

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

All systems function during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats, which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver side.

Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Starting and operating

New vehicle running-in

Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher.

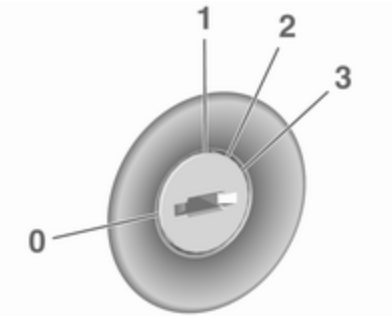
Additionally, the cleaning process of the exhaust filter may take place more often.

Exhaust filter ⇨ 167.

Autostop may be inhibited to allow for charging of the vehicle battery.

Ignition switch positions

Turn key:



0 : ignition off: Some functions remain active until key is removed or driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously

1 : accessory power mode: Steering wheel lock released, some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off

2 : ignition on power mode: Ignition is on, diesel engine is preheating. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable. To turn the key from position **2** to **1** or **0**, first push the key all the way in towards the steering column.

3 : engine start: Release key after starting procedure begins

Steering wheel lock

Remove key from ignition switch and turn steering wheel until it engages.

⚠ Danger

Never remove the key from ignition switch during driving as this will cause steering wheel lock.

Power button

Electronic key must be inside the vehicle.

Accessory power mode
Press **Engine Start/Stop** once without operating clutch or brake pedal. The yellow LED in the button illuminates. Steering wheel lock is released and some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off.

Ignition on power mode
Press and hold **Engine Start/Stop** for six seconds without operating clutch or brake pedal. The green LED in the button illuminates, diesel engine is

preheating. Control indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine start
Operate clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission or manual transmission automated) and press **Engine Start/Stop** once more. Release button after starting procedure begins. Release the button after starting procedure begins.

Ignition off
Press **Engine Start/Stop** briefly in each mode or when engine is running and vehicle is stationary. Some functions remain active until driver's door is opened, provided the ignition was on previously.

Emergency shut off during driving
Press **Engine Start/Stop** for longer than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds ⇨ 160.

Steering wheel lock

The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been switched off.
- The driver's door is opened.

To release steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and switch on accessory mode or start the engine directly.

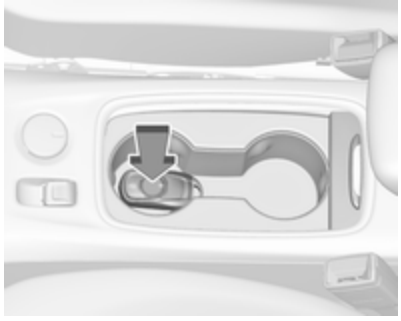
⚠Warning

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the vehicle must not be towed, tow-started or jump-started as the steering wheel lock cannot be disengaged.

Operation on vehicles with electronic key system in case of failure

If either the electronic key fails or the battery of the electronic key is weak, the Driver Information Centre may display **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** when you try to start the vehicle.

Place the electronic key solely centred in the transmitter area in longitudinal direction flat with buttons upside as shown in the illustration.



Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponder, tags, coins etc. must be removed from the centre console.

Depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or the brake pedal (automatic transmission or manual transmission automated) and press **Engine Start/Stop**.

To switch off the engine, press **Engine Start/Stop** again. Remove the electronic key from the centre console.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the electronic key battery as soon as possible ⇨ 23.

For unlocking or locking the doors, see fault in radio remote control unit or electronic key system ⇨ 25.

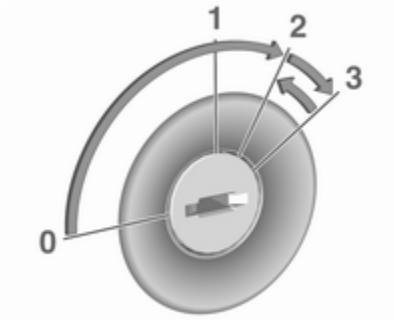
Retained power off

The following electronic systems can work until the driver's door is opened or for ten minutes after the ignition is switched off:

- power windows
- sunroof
- power outlets

Starting the engine

Vehicles with ignition switch



Turn key to position **1** to release the steering wheel lock.

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

Diesel engines: turn the key to position **2** for preheating and wait until control indicator ⚯ extinguishes.

Turn key briefly to position **3** and release: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running, see Automatic Starter Control.

Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ⇨ 162.

Automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ⇨ 162.

Vehicles with power button

Manual transmission: operate clutch and brake pedal.

Automatic transmission: operate brake pedal and move selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Manual transmission automated: operate brake pedal.

Do not operate accelerator pedal.

Press and release **Engine Start/Stop**: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running, see automatic starter control.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, press **Engine Start/Stop** once more briefly.

To start the engine during an Autostop:

- Manual transmission: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal ⇨ 162.
- Automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: during an Autostop, the engine can be started by releasing the brake pedal ⇨ 162.

Emergency shut off during driving

If the engine needs to be switched off during driving in case of emergency, press **Engine Start/Stop** for longer than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds.

⚠ Danger

Switching off the engine during driving may cause loss of power support for brake and steering systems. Assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and brake lights will extinguish. Therefore power down the engine and ignition while driving only when required in case of emergency.

Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery. With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission requires a warming phase of approx. five minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

Automatic starter control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the key in position **3** or to hold **Engine Start/Stop** pressed. Once applied, the system will go on

starting automatically until the engine is running. Because of the checking procedure, the engine starts running after a short delay.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine:

- Clutch pedal not operated (manual transmission).
- Brake pedal not operated or selector lever not in **P** or **N** (automatic transmission).
- Brake pedal not operated (manual transmission automated).
- Timeout occurred.

Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Overrun cut-off

The fuel supply is automatically cut off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator pedal is released.

Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.

Stop-start system

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam. The ignition stays on.

The engine switches on automatically when certain conditions apply or restart is activated by a driver.

Activation

The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

Deactivation

Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing Ⓐ OFF. The deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

Autostop

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depending on the engine, two versions of an Autostop are available. See engine data to identify the engine identifier code for your vehicle ⇨ 287.

Conventional Autostop

All engines except B16DTU have only the conventional Autostop.

An Autostop can be activated at a speed lower than 5 km/h.

Activate a conventional Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the lever in neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

Early Autostop

Only the engine B16DTU has early Autostop in addition to conventional Autostop.

An Autostop can be activated at a speed lower than 14 km/h.

Early Autostop is inhibited if the incline is greater than 5%.

Activate an early Autostop as follows:

- Depress the brake pedal sufficiently.
- Depress the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Early Autostop is inhibited when the turn signal is on, trailer hitch is connected, the steering wheel is moved beyond a certain point or the inclines is greater than 5%.

Vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated

If the vehicle is at a standstill with depressed brake pedal, Autostop is activated automatically.

Indication

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

After restart, the idle speed is indicated.

During an Autostop the performance of the vehicle will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled:

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- Between the last Restart and a new Autostop must be about 10 s.

- The self-cleaning function of the exhaust filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

The stop-start system will be deactivated on inclines of 12% or more.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. See Climate control chapter for more details ⇨ 147.

Immediately after motorway driving an Autostop may be inhibited.

New vehicle running-in ⇨ 157.

Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several vehicle battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.

Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features such as auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

Restart of the engine by the driver

Vehicles with manual transmission

Depending on the engine, two versions of a restart are available. See engine data to identify the engine identifier code for your vehicle ⇨ 287.

Conventional restart

Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine. For engines with late restart, this is only possible without depressing the brake pedal.

Late restart

All petrol engines and the diesel engines B16DTU and B16DTR have late restart in addition to conventional restart. Late restart is only active on inclines up to 5%.

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Select first gear.
- Release the brake pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: Release the brake pedal or move selector lever out of **D** into **N** or **P** to restart the engine.

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

On vehicles with manual transmission which are in a conventional Autostop, the selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

On vehicles with manual transmission which are in an early Autostop, an automatic restart is possible, when not in neutral if the brake pedal and the clutch pedal are depressed.

On vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated, the selector lever must be in **D** to enable an automatic restart.

The engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system, if one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop:

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and / or the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The desired compartment temperature does not match the actual temperature.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Note
If a trailer or a bike carrier is attached, early Autostop and late restart is deactivated.

Parking

⚠ Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

  For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch Ⓟ for a minimum of one second until control indicator Ⓟ illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied ⇨ 110.
- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

  If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key or switching off ignition on vehicles with power button. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or switch off ignition on vehicles with power

button. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

For vehicles with manual transmission automated, the key can only be removed from the ignition switch when the parking brake is applied.

- Lock the vehicle.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 231.

Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is switched off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.

Emergency operation under extreme cold temperatures

⚠ Warning

This emergency operation may only be carried out in case of extremely cold temperatures and if the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

In countries with extreme cold temperatures it may be necessary to park the vehicle without applied parking brake.

This is an emergency operation to avoid freezing of the parking brake.

Vehicles equipped with manual transmission automated, electric parking brake and power button

On vehicles with manual transmission automated the ignition can only be switched off if the parking brake is applied. Therefore the following items must be carried out to release the electric parking brake:

1. Apply electric parking brake and switch off ignition.
2. Switch on ignition by pressing and holding **Engine Start/Stop** for six seconds without operating brake pedal.
3. Press brake pedal and release electric parking brake.
4. Switch off ignition.

Vehicles equipped with manual transmission automated, electric parking brake and ignition switch

On vehicles with manual transmission automated the ignition can only be switched off if the parking brake is applied. Therefore the following items must be carried out to release the electric parking brake:

1. Apply electric parking brake and switch off ignition.
2. Press brake pedal and release electric parking brake.
3. Remove key from ignition switch.

Engine exhaust

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Exhaust filter

The exhaust filter is a particle filter for diesel and gasoline engines.

Automatic cleaning process

The exhaust filter system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification. The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it needs between seven and twelve minutes. Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

System requires cleaning

Under certain conditions, e.g. driving short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by a warning message in the Driver Information Centre.

A warning message appears when exhaust filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

A warning message also appears when exhaust filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Activate self-cleaning process

To activate cleaning process, continue driving, keep engine speed above 2000 rpm. Shift down if necessary. Exhaust filter cleaning is then started.

Cleaning process is completed more quickly at high engine speeds and loads.

Keep on driving until self-cleaning operation is complete and the display message disappears.

Caution

If possible, do not interrupt cleaning process. Drive until cleaning is completed to avoid the need for service or repair by a workshop.

Cleaning process not possible

If cleaning is not possible for any reason, control indicator illuminates and a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre. Engine power may be reduced. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages ⇨ 219, ⇨ 287 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

AdBlue

General information

The selective catalytic reduction (BlueInjection) is a method to substantially reduce the nitrogen oxides in the exhaust emission. This is achieved by injecting a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust system. The ammonia released by the fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NO_x) from the exhaust and turns it into nitrogen and water.

The designation of this fluid is AdBlue®. It is a non-toxic, non-flammable, colourless and odourless fluid which consists of 32% urea and 68% water.

⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of your eyes or skin with AdBlue.

In case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid contact of the paintwork with AdBlue.

In case of contact, rinse off with water.

AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. As the vehicle is equipped with an AdBlue pre-heater, the emissions reduction at low temperatures is ensured. The AdBlue pre-heater works automatically.

The typical AdBlue consumption is approx. two litres per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing).

AdBlue tank

The AdBlue tank level can be found in the display menu.

Level warnings

Depending on the calculated range of AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

The first possible warning is **AdBlue Range: 2400 km**.

This warning will show up once briefly with the calculated range. Driving is possible without any restrictions.

The next warning level is entered with a range below 1750 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on and needs to be confirmed ⇨ 115. Refill AdBlue before entering the next warning level.

At an AdBlue range below 900 km, the following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Low Refill Now**
- **Engine Restart Prevented in 900 km**.

Additionally, control indicator flashes continuously.

Note
In case of high AdBlue consumption, the Driver Information Centre may display this warning without the previous warning stages.

The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restart of the engine is not possible. The following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Empty Refill Now**
- **Engine Will Not Restart**.

Additionally, control indicator flashes continuously.

With active prevention of an engine start, the following message will be displayed:

Refill AdBlue To Start Vehicle.

The tank must be refilled completely with AdBlue, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

⇨ 294

High emission warnings

If the exhaust emission rises above a certain value, warnings similar to the range warnings will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Requests to have the exhaust system checked and finally the announcement of the prevention of an engine restart are displayed. These restrictions are a legal requirement.

Consult a workshop for assistance.

Refilling AdBlue

Caution

Only use AdBlue that complies with European standards DIN 70 070 and ISO 22241-1.

Do not use additives.

Do not dilute AdBlue.

Otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Note
Whenever a filling pump with a nozzle for passenger cars is not available at a filling station, use only AdBlue bottles or canisters with a sealed refill adapter for refilling, to prevent splashback and overspill, and in order to ensure that the fumes from the tank are captured and do not emerge. AdBlue in bottles or canisters is available in many filling stations and can be purchased e.g. at Opel dealers and other retail outlets.

Since AdBlue has a limited durability, check the date of expiry before refilling.

Note
When unscrewing the protective cap from the filler neck, ammonia fumes may emerge. Do not inhale as the fumes have a pungent smell. The fumes are not harmful by inhalation.

The AdBlue tank should be filled completely. This must be done if the warning message regarding prevention of an engine restart is already displayed.

The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.

The filler neck for AdBlue is located behind the fuel filler flap, which is located at right rear side of the vehicle.

The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked.

1. Remove key from ignition switch.
2. Close all doors to avoid ammonia fumes entering the interior of the vehicle.
3. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap ⇨ 221.

4. Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.
5. Open AdBlue canister.
6. Mount one end of the hose on the canister and screw the other end on the filler neck.
7. Lift the canister until it is empty, or until the flow from the canister has stopped. This can take up to five minutes.
8. Place the canister on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.
9. Unscrew the hose from the filler neck.
10. Mount the protective cap and turn clockwise until it engages.

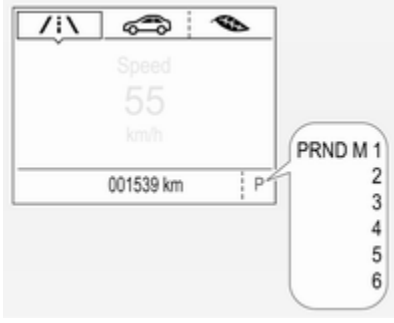
Note
Dispose of AdBlue canister according to environmental requirements. To reuse the hose flush it with clear water after usage.

Automatic transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the selector lever to **+** or **-** ⇨ 173.

Transmission display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the Driver Information Centre.

In automatic mode, the driving programme is indicated by **D**.

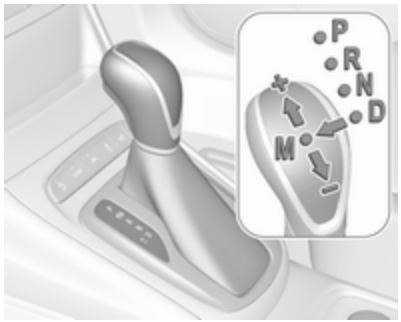
In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R indicates reverse gear.

N indicates neutral position.

P indicates park position.

Selector lever



P : park position, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied
R : reverse gear, engage only when the vehicle is stationary
N : neutral
D : automatic mode
M : manual mode
+ : upshift in manual mode
− : downshift in manual mode

The selector lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the selector lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

Without brake pedal applied, control indicator ⊘ illuminates.

If the selector lever is not in **P** when the ignition is switched off, control indicator ⊘ flashes.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with the lever in position **P** or **N**. When position **N** is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

Engine braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill, see manual mode.

Rocking the vehicle

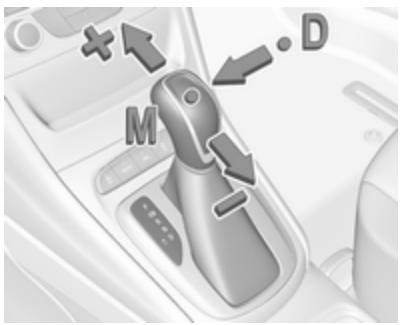
Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between **D** and **R** in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

Manual mode



Move selector lever out of position **D** towards the left in position **M**.

Tap selector lever upwards **+** to shift to a higher gear.

Tap the selector lever downwards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Gear shift indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic driving programmes

- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to select manually first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing down the accelerator pedal beyond the kickdown detent will lead to maximum acceleration independent of selected driving mode. The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a fault a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Electronic transmission control enables only fourth gear. The transmission no longer shifts automatically.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads ⇨ 271.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever.

1. Apply the parking brake.

2. Release the selector lever trim from the centre console. Poke with a finger into the leather socket below the selector lever and push the trim upwards. Rotate trim to the left.

3. Insert a small stick (e.g. a pen or screw driver) into the opening near the selector lever. Push down the the stick vertically and move the selector lever out of **P**. If this position is engaged again, the selector lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption remedied by a workshop.
4. Mount the selector lever trim onto the centre console and refit.

Manual transmission

To engage reverse, depress the clutch pedal and then press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

When clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

Caution
It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Gear shift indication ⇨ 111.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

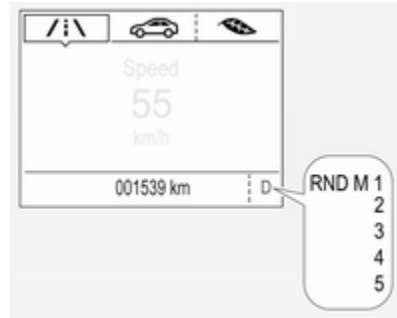
Manual transmission automated

The automated manual transmission permits manual gearshifting (manual mode) or automatic gearshifting (automatic mode), both with automatic clutch control.

Manual shifting is possible by tapping the selector lever in manual mode.

Note
When unlocking or opening a vehicle door, a sound may be audible caused by the hydraulic system.

Transmission display



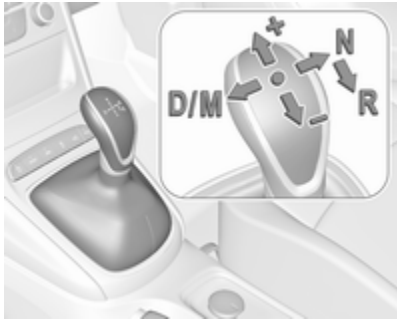
In automatic mode, the driving programme is indicated by **D** in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R indicates reverse gear.

N indicates neutral.

Selector lever



Always move the selector lever in the appropriate direction as far as it will go. Upon release, it automatically returns to the centre position.

Note
Do not hold the selector lever in an intermediate position. Not fully engaging a gear may lead to malfunction and an error message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Return the selector lever to the centre position. After a short while N will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre and the system will operate normally again.

N : neutral position
D/M : switch between automatic **(D)** and manual **(M)** shift mode. The transmission display shows either **D** or **M** with the selected gear
+ : upshifting in manual mode
– : downshifting in manual mode
R : reverse gear. Engage only when vehicle is stationary

If selector lever is moved from **R** to the left, **D** is directly engaged.

If selector lever is moved from **D** to **+** or **-**, manual mode **M** is selected and the transmission shifts.

Starting off

Depress the brake pedal and move the selector lever to **D/M** or **R**. If **D** is selected, transmission is in automatic mode and first gear is engaged. If **R** is selected, reverse gear is engaged.

The vehicle starts to move when the brake pedal is released.

To start-off without depressing the brake pedal, accelerate immediately after engaging a gear as long as **D** or **R** flashes.

If neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal are depressed, no gear is engaged and **D** or **R** flashes for a brief time in the display.

Stopping the vehicle

In **D**, first gear is engaged and the clutch is released when the vehicle is stopped. In **R**, reverse gear remains engaged.

Engine braking

Automatic mode

When driving downhill, the manual transmission automated does not shift into higher gears until a fairly high engine speed has been reached. It shifts down in good time when braking.

Manual mode
To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill. Changing into manual mode is only possible while the engine is running or during an Autostop.

Rocking the vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between **R** and **D** in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

The most recently engaged gear (see transmission display) remains engaged when switching off ignition. With **N**, no gear is engaged.

Therefore always apply the parking brake when switching off ignition. If parking brake is not applied, **P** flashes in the transmission display and the key cannot be removed from the ignition switch. **P** stops flashing in the transmission display as soon as the parking brake is slightly applied.

When the ignition is switched off, the transmission no longer responds to movement of the selector lever.

Emergency operation to avoid freezing of the parking brake ⇨ 165.

Manual mode

If a higher gear is selected when the engine speed is too low, or a lower gear when the speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This prevents the engine from running at too low or too high an engine speed. A warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

If engine speed is too low, the transmission automatically shifts to a lower gear.

When **+** or **-** is selected in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode and shifts accordingly.

Gear shift indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside is indicated when gearshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic driving programmes

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
- The adaptive programme tailors gearshifting to the driving conditions, e.g. greater load or gradients.

Kickdown

If the accelerator pedal is pressed down completely in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

To prevent damage to the manual transmission automated, the clutch is engaged automatically at high clutch temperatures.

In the event of a fault, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Continued driving is restricted or not possible, depending on the fault.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Control indicator ⇨ 110.

Antilock brake system

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

Control indicator ⇨ 111.

Adaptive brake light

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

Fault

⚠ Warning

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

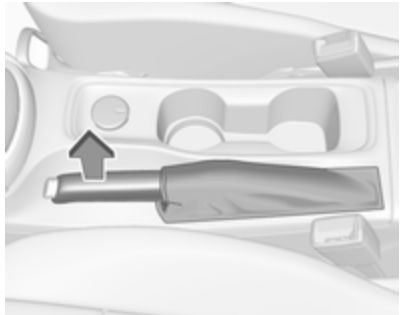
Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Parking brake

⚠ Warning

Before leaving the vehicle, check parking brake status. Control indicator (!) (manual parking brake) or (P) (electrical parking brake) must illuminate constantly.

Manual parking brake



⚠ Warning

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Control indicator (!) ⇨ 110.

Electric parking brake

Applying when vehicle is stationary

⚠ Warning

Pull switch (P) for a minimum of one second until control indicator (P) illuminates constantly and electric parking brake is applied

> ⇨ 110. The electric parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.
>
> Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status. Control indicator Ⓟ ⇨ 110.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Releasing

Switch on ignition. Keep foot brake pedal depressed and then push switch Ⓟ.

Drive away function

Vehicles with manual transmission: Depressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when switch Ⓟ is pulled at the same time.

Vehicles with automatic transmission or manual transmission automated: Engaging **D** and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically. This is not possible when switch Ⓟ is pulled at the same time.

Dynamic braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch Ⓟ is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch Ⓟ is released, dynamic braking will be stopped.

Automatic applying

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic transmission and adaptive cruise control is active, electric parking brake is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than two minutes.

Parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

Functionality check

When the vehicle is not moving, the electric parking brake might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by a control indicator and by a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Apply electric parking brake: pull and hold the switch Ⓟ for more than five seconds. If control indicator Ⓟ illuminates, electric parking brake is applied.

Release electric parking brake: push and hold the switch Ⓟ for more than two seconds. If control indicator Ⓟ extinguishes, electric parking brake is released.

Control indicator Ⓟ flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

Brake assist

If brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied.

Operation of brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when depressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

Hill start assist

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, brakes remain on for further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Ride control systems

Traction Control system

The Traction Control system (TC) is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator extinguishes.

When TC operates flashes.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator ⇨ 111.

Deactivation

TC can be switched off when spinning of drive wheels is required: press briefly.

Control indicator illuminates.

A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with higher control threshold.

TC is reactivated by pressing again. A status message pops up in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system the control indicator illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer/oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC). It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.

Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeering and improves traction when cornering fast.

ESC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator extinguishes.

When ESC operates flashes.

⚠Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator ⇨ 111.

Deactivation

ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- hold pressed for a minimum of five seconds: ESC and TC are both deactivated. and illuminate and status messages appear in the Driver Information Centre.

- To deactivate only Traction control system press button briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active, illuminates. A status message appears in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the button again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated. and extinguishes when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system the control indicator illuminates continuously and a message appears in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

Sport mode

Sport mode adapts the settings of some vehicle systems to a sportier driving style.

Activation

Press **SPORT** when engine is running.

LED in the button illuminates when sport mode is active and a status message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Deactivation

Briefly press **SPORT**. Sport mode is deactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Driver assistance systems

⚠ Warning

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention.

The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.

When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

Cruise control

The cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approx. 30 km/h to maximum vehicle speed. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

Activating in first gear is not possible.

Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Illustrations show different versions.

Control indicator ⏲ ➪ 114.

Switching on the system

Press ⏲; control indicator ⏲ in instrument cluster illuminates white.

Activation of the functionality

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator ⏲ in instrument cluster illuminates green. On Uplevel display ⏲ illuminates green and set speed is indicated. Accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

Increase speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly: speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.

Reduce speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly: speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press ⏲; control indicator ⏲ in instrument cluster illuminates white.

On Uplevel display ⏲ changes to white.

Cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Automatic deactivation:

- Vehicle speed is below approx. 30 km/h.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 25 km/h below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds.
- The selector lever is in **N**.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.

- The Traction Control system or Electronic Stability Control is operating.
- Parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneous pressing **RES/+** and brake pedal deactivates cruise control and will delete stored speed.

Resume stored speed

Turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be obtained.

Switching off the system

Press ⊘, control indicator ⊘ in instrument cluster extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

Pressing ⊘ to activate the speed limiter or switching off the ignition also switches off cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

Speed limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

The maximum speed can be set at speeds above 25 km/h up to 200 km/h.

The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when the system is active.

Activation of the functionality

Illustrations show different versions.

Press ⊘, symbol ⊘ illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

If cruise control has been activated before, it is switched off when speed limiter is activated and the control indicator ⊘ extinguishes.

Set speed limit

Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**: the current speed is stored as maximum speed.

On Midlevel display ⊘ and the speed limit is displayed.

On Uplevel display changes to green.

Change speed limit

With speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.

Exceeding the speed limit

When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the Driver Information Centre and a chime sounds during this period.

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly nearly to the final point. In this case no chime appears.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation of the functionality

Press : speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.

On Midlevel display the stored limited speed is indicated in brackets.

On Uplevel display changes to white.

Additionally, a corresponding message appears.

Speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.

Resume limit speed

Turn thumb wheel to **RES/+**. The stored speed limit will be obtained and is indicated without brackets in the Driver Information Centre.

Switching off the system

Press , the speed limit indication extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre. The stored speed is deleted.

By pressing to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control, speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

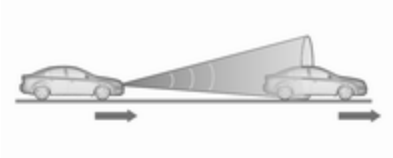
By switching off the ignition, speed limiter is also deactivated, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

Adaptive cruise control

Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain distance behind the vehicle ahead.

Adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

The adaptive cruise control can store set speed over 30 km/h for manual transmission. On vehicles with automatic transmissions the system can brake until a full stop and drive off from a stop.



Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

For additional information including a video, visit us online.

Adaptive cruise control is mainly advised to be used on long straight roads like highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

Control indicator ⇨ 114, ⇨ 114, ⇨ 114.

⚠ Warning

The complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control. The driver stays fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

Switching on the system

Press to switch on adaptive cruise control. appears in the Driver Information Centre.

Activation of the funtionality

Adaptive cruise control can be activated at speeds above 25 km/h on vehicles with automatic transmission or 30 km/h on vehicles with manual transmission. The upper speed limit is 180 km/h.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**, the current speed is stored and maintained.

The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and set speed are indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

The accelerator pedal can be released. Adaptive cruise control remains activated during gear shifting.

Overriding set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead, which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

⚠Warning

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre or by the adaptive cruise control symbol turning blue.

Take over current speed

If the accelerator pedal is pressed, the current vehicle speed is taken over as stored speed. This is also valid, if the current vehicle speed is lower than the Set Speed.

Increase speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **RES/+** to increase speed continuously. Push **RES/+** repeatedly to increase speed in small increments.

Reduce speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **SET/-** to decrease speed continuously. Push **SET/-** repeatedly to decrease speed in small increments.

Resume stored speed

If the system is switched on but inactive and a speed was stored before, turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 5 km/h (with automatic transmission) or above 30 km/h (with manual transmission) to resume the stored speed.

Full speed range adaptive cruise control on vehicles with automatic transmission

Full speed range adaptive cruise control will maintain a following distance behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

When the vehicle ahead accelerates after a brief stop, the adaptive cruise control will drive off automatically without driver action. If necessary,

press **RES/+** or the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control. Pressing the accelerator pedal allows more control over the acceleration after driving off. Note that automatic braking is disabled during usage of the accelerator pedal.

If the stopped vehicle ahead was stopped for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check traffic before proceeding.

⚠ Warning

When full speed range adaptive cruise control is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Always be prepared to manually apply the brake pedal to hold the vehicle stationary.

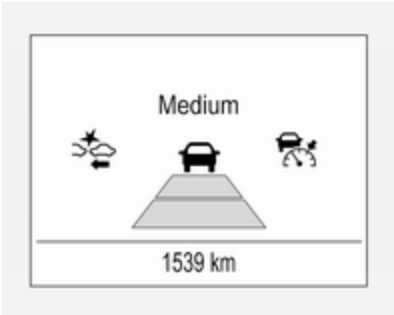
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by the full speed range adaptive cruise control. Always move selector lever to park position **P** and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Setting the following distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.

Press , the current setting is shown in the Driver Information Centre. Press again to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the Driver Information Centre.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

Note that the following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of forward collision alert ⇨ 195.

Example: If setting 3 (far) is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision, also if adaptive cruise control is inactive or switched off.

⚠ Warning

The Driver accepts full responsibility to drive with the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, visibility and regional regulation. Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the vehicle ahead

The green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator 🚗 is displayed when the system detects a vehicle in the driving path. The range of the sensors is between 25 and 150 metres depending on vehicle speed.

Forward collision alert ⇨ 195.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

Deactivation of the functionality

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:

- 🏎 is pressed.
- Brake pedal is applied.
- Clutch pedal is depressed for more than four seconds.
- Selector lever of automatic transmission is moved to **N**.

The system is also automatically deactivated when:

- Vehicle speed accelerates above 190 km/h or slows down below 55 km/h Vehicles with automatic transmission slows down to a stop without deactivating within five minutes.
- The Traction Control system is deactivated or operating.
- The Electronic Stability Control is deactivated or operating.
- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for approx. one minute. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The active emergency braking system is applying the brakes.
- Driving on steep inclines.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, camera, engine or brake system.
- The brakes need to cool down.

Additionally, the system is automatically deactivated on vehicles with automatic transmission (full speed range adaptive cruise control) when:

- The incline uphill or downhill is greater than 20%.
- The electric parking brake is applied.

- The vehicle is being held to a stop by the system for more than five minutes.
- The vehicle stops, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the control indicator changes from green to white and a pop-up message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

The stored speed is maintained.

On Midlevel display, the stored speed is indicated in brackets in the Driver Information Centre when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

On Uplevel display, the adaptive cruise control symbol changes from green to white when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

⚠Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full brake and engine control immediately.

Switching off the system

Press to switch off adaptive cruise control. The control indicator extinguishes in the Driver Information Centre. The stored speed is deleted.

Switching off the ignition also switches off adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

Driver's attention

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

System limits

⚠Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

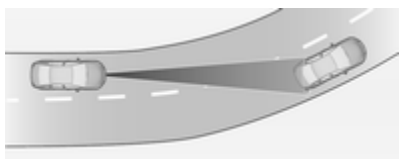
- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.

- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not consider pedestrians and animals for braking and driving off.
- Adaptive cruise control considers stopped vehicles only at low speed.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with an incline of more than 10%.

Bends

The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on the centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change. The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets stronger or weaker. The camrea applies a certain correction based on the detectable lane markings. The control indicator will extinguish, if a vehicle ahead is no longer detected.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows down the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning-off the bend. The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.

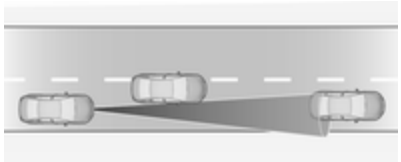


Motorways

On motorways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not. Furthermore, adaptive cruise control was designed to brake as late as possible to allow changing the lane before the automatic braking. Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

While entering or exiting a motorway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

Vehicle path changes



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to take action and depress the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

Hill and trailer considerations

⚠Warning

Do not use adaptive cruise control on steep hill roads.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. Full speed range adaptive control is deactivated automatically, as the vehicle is stopping uphill on an incline greater than 10%. In this condition, be prepared to take control of the vehicle.

Note that applying the brake deactivates the system.

Radar unit

The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille behind or below the brand emblem.

⚠Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a front-end impact, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a workshop to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

Settings

Settings can be changed in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display.

Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Vehicle** in the Info-Display.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Fault

If the adaptive cruise control does not work due to temporary conditions (e.g. blockage by ice, overheated brakes or low speed manoeuvres) or if there is a permanent system error, then a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Forward collision alert

The forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.

If the vehicle is equipped with conventional cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path.

If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the radar sensor to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path.

A vehicle ahead is indicated by the control indicator 🚗.

If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre is provided.

Additionally the driver gets notified by a flashing red LED stripe which is projected on the windscreen in the driver's field of view.

A precondition is that forward collision alert with front camera system is not deactivated by pressing ⚙ on the steering wheel or, with radar sensor, that it is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 125.

Activation

Forward collision alert with front camera detects vehicles to distances of approximately 60 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

Forward collision alert with radar sensor detects vehicles to distances of approximately 150 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

Alerting the driver

The vehicle ahead control indicator 🚗 illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

The control indicator 🚗 changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

Caution
The colour lighting of this control indicator does not correspond to local traffic laws on following

distance. The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions etc. at all times.

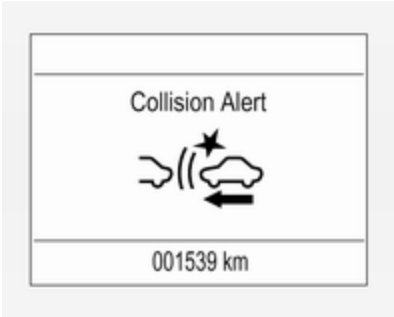
When the time to a potential collision with a vehicle in front gets too small and a collision is imminent, the collision alert symbol pops-up in the Driver Information Centre and the driver gets notified by a warning chime sound.

Depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle, if it is required by the situation.

Selecting the alert sensitivity

Press ⚙ or ⚙ to set the alert sensitivity to near, medium or far and on some versions off.

The first button press shows the current setting on the Driver Information Centre. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed. The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.



Note that the alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control. So changing the alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated.

On forward collision alert with radar sensor the system can be disabled by the personalisation menu, ⇨ 125.

On forward collision alert with front camera press repeatedly until **Forward Collision Alert Off** appears in the Driver Information Centre.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to "medium" when ignition is switched on next time.

The last selected setting will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

General information

⚠Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

System limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to warn on vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:

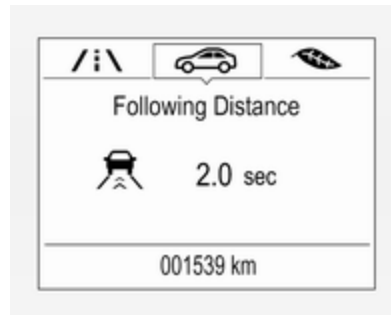
- on winding roads
- when weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow
- when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers

Following distance indication

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle. The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds, displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre.

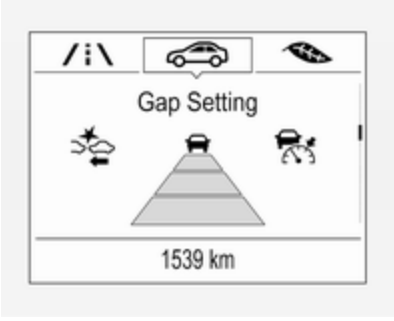
On Midlevel display, choose **Info** Menu via **MENU** on the turn signal lever and turn the adjuster wheel to choose following distance indication page,⇨ 115



On Uplevel display, select **Info** menu via steering wheel buttons and press ∨ to select following distance indication ⇨ 115.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -.- sec.



If Adaptive cruise control is active, this page shows the alert sensitivity setting instead of following distance setting. ⇨ 187.

Active emergency braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage and injury from crashes with vehicles and obstacles directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert ⇨ 195.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. camera sensor, radar sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react for pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Functionality

If equipped only with front camera the active emergency braking operates in forward gear above walking speed up to 85 km/h.

With radar sensor active emergency braking operates in forward gear above walking speed at all speeds.

A precondition is that forward collision alert with front camera system is not deactivated by pressing on the steering wheel ⇨ 195 or, with radar sensor, that it is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 125.

The system includes:

- brake preparation system
- emergency automatic braking

- forward looking brake assist
- intelligent brake assist (only with radar sensor)

Brake preparation system

When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurizes the brakes. This reduces the response time, when a manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur more rapidly.

If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of 80 km/h.

Emergency automatic braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision or prohibit a crash. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle ahead is detected, indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator ⇨ 195.

If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of 60 km/h.

Below a speed of 40 km/h the system can apply full braking.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, emergency automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release press the electric parking brake button or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle. Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

Forward looking brake assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function makes the brake assist more sensitive. Therefore, pressing the brake pedal less strongly results in immediate hard braking. This function helps the driver brake quicker and harder before the imminent collision.

If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of 85 km/h.

⚠ Warning

Active emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react for pedestrians or animals.

After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

Intelligent Brake Assist

If the vehicle is equipped with radar sensor Intelligent brake assist may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. Intelligent brake assist will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Intelligent brake assist may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

Deactivation

On vehicles with front camera active emergency braking can be deactivated by repeatedly pressing the gap switch to **Off** setting, ⇨ 195. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

On vehicles with radar sensor the system can be disabled in the personalisation menu in the Info-display, ⇨ 125.

We recommend to deactivate the system in the vehicle personalisation in the following cases:

- when the vehicle is being towed
- before using an automatic car wash with ignition switched on
- if the windscreen has been damaged close to the camera
- if the front bumper has been damaged

System limitations

In some cases, the active emergency braking system may provide an automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, for instance in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation, the vehicle does not need

service. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking.

Emergency automatic braking may not:

- detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.
- detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.

To avoid malfunction keep the areas of the camera sensor in the windscreen and the radar sensor in the radiator grille always clean from dirt, dust, ice and snow.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Fault

In case the system requires a service, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Parking assist

General information

When the trailer hitch is attached, change the configuration settings in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

When attaching a trailer or bike carrier to the trailer hitch, the parking assist is deactivated.

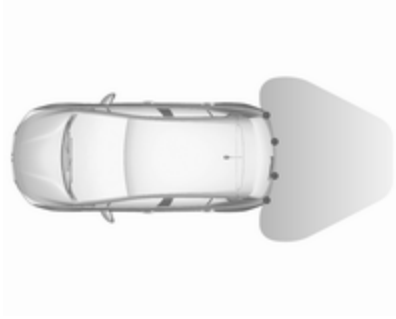
Rear parking assist

⚠Warning

It is the driver who bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area while reversing and using the rear parking assist system.

The rear parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and rear obstacles. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

After ignition is switched on, the rear parking assist is activated.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates that the system is ready to operate.

Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 metres while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the signal is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.

The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

Press parking assist button P to deactivate, the LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

Front-rear parking assist

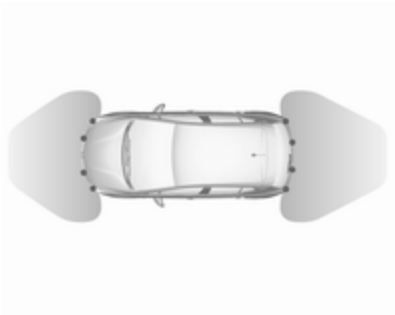
⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indication.

It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

The system is activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P⁾⁾▲ indicates that the system is ready to operate.

If P⁾⁾▲ is switched off within an ignition cycle, the parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

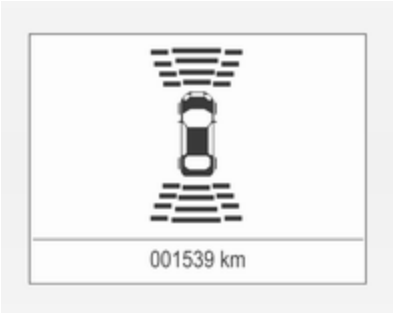
When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message pops up in the Driver Information Centre.

Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle in a distance range up to 80 cm and against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals in the vehicle on the respective side. The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the signal is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115 or, depending on the version, on the Info Display ⇨ 121.



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 11 km/h.

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message pops up in the Driver Information Centre.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info Display. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until activation in personalisation menu again. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message pops-up in the Driver Information Centre.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

Advanced parking assist

⚠ Warning

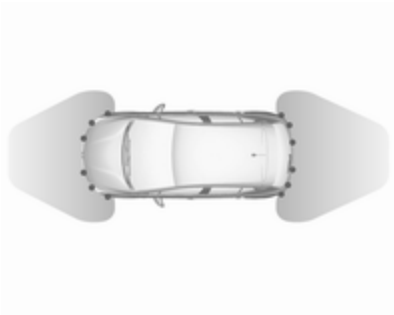
The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.

The advanced parking assist measures a suitable parking slot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking slot.

Instructions are given in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115 or, depending on the version, on the Info Display ⇨ 121, supported by acoustic signals.

The driver must control acceleration, braking and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically.



Advanced parking assist is always combined with front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumper.

The system has six ultrasonic parking sensors each in both the rear and front bumper.

Activation of advanced parking assist

Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.

When searching for a parking slot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of P.

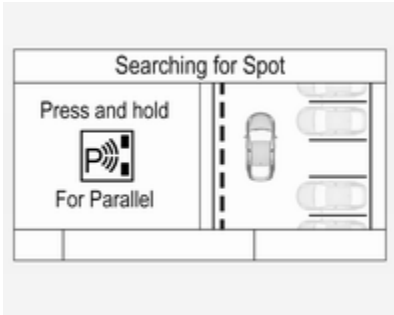
The system recognises and memorises ten metres for parallel parking slots or six metres for perpendicular parking slots in the parking assist mode.

The system can only be activated and searches for a parking slot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres for parallel parking and 2.5 metres for perpendicular parking.

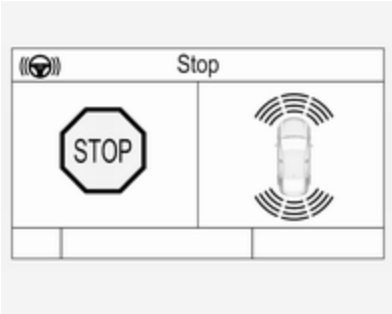
Functionality

Parking slot searching mode, indication in the Driver Information Centre



Select parallel or perpendicular parking slot in Driver Information Centre by long press on P.

The system is configured to detect parking slots by default on the passenger side. To detect parking slots on the driver side, switch on turn signal indicator on the driver side.

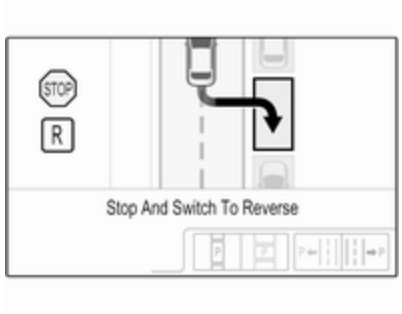


When a slot is detected, a visual feedback in the Driver Information Centre and an acoustic signal is given.

Indication in the Info Display

Select parallel or perpendicular parking slot by tapping the respective icon on the display.

Select parking side by tapping the respective icon on the display.



When a slot is detected, a visual feedback on the Colour-Info-Display and an acoustic signal is given.

If the driver does not stop the vehicle after a parking slot is proposed, the system starts to search for another suitable parking slot.

Park guiding mode

The parking slot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking slots or six metres for perpendicular parking slots after the message to stop the car is indicated. The system calculates the optimal path into the parking slot.

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates that the steering is controlled by the system. Then the vehicle is steered into the slot automatically by giving the driver detailed instructions for braking, accelerating and gear shifting. The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

Always pay attention to the signals of the front-rear parking assist. Continuous signal indicates that the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

Display indication

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- A hint when driving faster than 30 km/h during parking slot searching mode.
- The demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The demand to shift into reverse or first gear.
- The demand to stop or to drive slowly.
- For some of the instructions a progress bar is shown in the Driver Information Centre.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a pop-up symbol and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

Display priorities

Advanced parking assist indication in the Driver Information Centre can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After approving the message by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever or ✔ on the steering wheel, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:

- a short press of
- parking manoeuvre successfully ended
- driving faster than 30 km/h during parking slot search
- driving faster than 8 km/h during parking guidance
- driver interference on steering wheel detected
- exceeding number of maximum gear changes: eight cycles when parallel parking or five cycles when perpendicular parking
- switching off the ignition

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by a message on the display. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

Fault

A message appears when:

- There is a fault in the system.
- The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
- The system is not operational.
- Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, a message to stop the vehicle is indicated. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of P will activate the system and search for a new parking slot.

Basic notes on parking assist systems

⚠Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

Note

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments (sporadic false warnings may occur).

Make sure that the front number plate is properly mounted (not bent and no gaps to the bumper on the left or right side) and the sensors are firmly in place.

Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre. The system may recognize an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking slot. After selecting reverse gear the system will start a parking manoeuvre. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking slot.

Surface irregularities, e.g. on construction zones, are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Note
After production, the system requires a calibration. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 10 km, including a number of bends, is required.

Side blind spot alert

The Side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified "blind spot" zone. The system displays a visual alert in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

Side blind spot alert uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors which are located in the front and rear bumper on both sides of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.

The system does not detect:

- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forwards, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, a yellow warning symbol will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal, the warning symbol starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Note
If the overtaking vehicle is at least 10 km/h faster than the vehicle being overtaken, the warning symbol in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.

Side blind spot alert is active from speeds of 10 km/h up to 140 km/h. Driving faster than 140 km/h deactivates the system, indicated by low lighting warning symbols in both exterior mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.

When the vehicle is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre.

Detection zones

The detection zones start at the rear bumper and extend approx. three metres rearwards and to the sides. The height of the zone is approx. between half a metre and two metres off the ground.

The system is deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer or if a bike carrier is attached.

Side blind spot alert is designed to ignore stationary objects, e.g. guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

Fault

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions.

Side blind spot alert does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, slush, or in heavy rainstorms. Cleaning instructions ⇨ 275.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Rear view camera

The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

The view of the camera is displayed in the Colour-Info-Display.

⚠ Warning

The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the advanced parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the Info-Display and check the surrounding area behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

Activation

Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

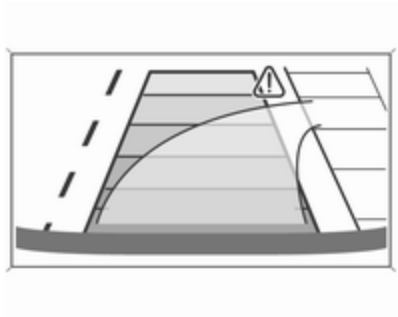
On 5-door hatchback the camera is mounted between the number plate lights.

On Sports Tourer the camera is mounted under the tailgate moulding.

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guiding lines

Dynamic guiding lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the picture to define the distance to displayed objects.



Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

Warning symbols

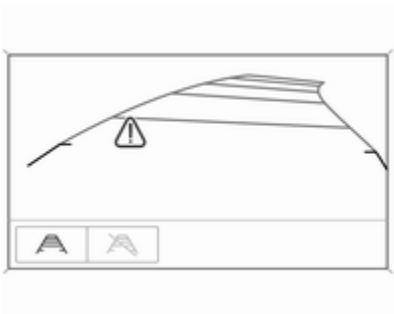
Warning symbols are indicated as triangles ⚠on the picture, which show obstacles detected by the rear sensors of the advanced parking assist.

Additionally, ⚠ appears on the top line of the Info-Display with the warning to check the vehicle surrounding.

Deactivation

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 15 seconds.

Deactivation of guiding lines and warning symbols



7" Colour-Info-Display: Activation or deactivation of the visual guiding lines and the warning symbols can be changed via touch buttons in the lower zone of the display.

8" Colour-Info-Display: Activation or deactivation of the visual guiding lines and the warning symbols can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Select the relevant setting in **Settings**, ➧ **Rear Camera**.

Info-Display ⇨ 121.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 125.

Fault

Fault messages are displayed with a ⚠ on the top line of the Info-Display.

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else covers the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle had a rear end accident.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Traffic sign assistant

Functionality

Traffic sign assistant detects designated traffic signs via a front camera and displays them in the Driver Information Centre.

If the vehicle is equipped with an embedded navigation system, traffic signs from data maps may be included additionally.

Traffic signs, which will be detected, are:

Limit and no passing signs
- speed limit
- no passing
- end of speed limit
- end of no passing

Road signs
Beginning and end of:
- city regions (country-specific)
- motorways
- A-roads
- play streets

Add on signs
- additional hints to traffic signs
- restriction of trailer towing
- tractor constraints
- wet warning
- ice warning
- time constraints
- distance constraints
- direction arrows

Speed limit signs and no passing signs are displayed in the Driver Information Centre until the next speed limit sign or end of speed limit is detected or up to a defined sign timeout.

Indication of multiple signs on the display is possible.

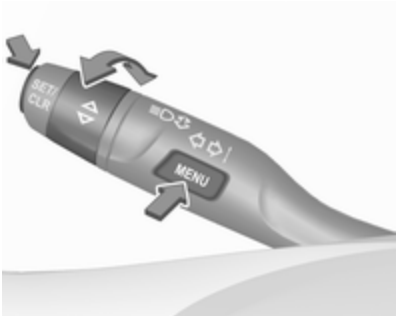
An exclamation mark in a frame indicates that there is an additional sign detected which cannot be clearly identified by the system.

The system operates without loss of performance up to a speed of 200 km/h depending on the lighting conditions. At night the system is active up to a speed of 160 km/h.

Display indication

Information about the currently valid traffic signs is available on the designated traffic sign assistant page in the Driver Information Centre.

Additionally, the currently valid speed limit is displayed permanently in the lower line of the Driver Information Centre. In case a speed limit with add on sign is available, a **+** symbol is displayed in this area.



On Midlevel display, choose **Info** Menu via **MENU** and select traffic sign assistant page with the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever ⇨ 115.

On Uplevel display, choose **Info** Menu via right steering wheel buttons and press ∨ or ∧ to select traffic sign assistant page ⇨ 115.

When another page on the Driver Information Centre menu was selected and then traffic sign assistant page is chosen again, the last recognised traffic sign will be displayed.

Alert function

The alert function can be activated or deactivated in the setting menu of the traffic sign assistant page.

Once activated and when the traffic sign detection page is currently not displayed, newly detected speed limit and no passing signs are displayed as pop-up alerts in the Driver Information Centre.

On Midlevel Display, when traffic sign assistant page is displayed, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever.

Select **Alerts ON** or **Alerts OFF** by turning the adjuster wheel and press **SET/CLR**.

On Uplevel Display, when traffic sign assistant page is displayed, press > on the steering wheel controls.

Activate alerts by setting ☑, deactivate alerts by setting ☐ via button ✔.

Pop-up alert is displayed for approx. eight seconds in the Driver Information Centre.

System reset

The content of the traffic sign display can be cleared in the setting menu of the traffic sign assistant page by selecting **Reset** and confirm by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever or ✔ on the steering wheel controls.

Alternatively, SET/CLR or ✔ can be pressed for three seconds to clear the content of the page.

Upon successful reset, a chime will sound and the following “Default Sign” is indicated until the next traffic sign is detected or provided by map data of the navigation system.

In some cases, traffic sign assistant is cleared up automatically by the system.

Clearing of traffic signs

There are different scenarios that lead to clearing the currently displayed traffic signs. After clearing, the “Default Sign” or a sign from navigation map data is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Reasons for signs being cleared:

- A predefined distance was driven or time has elapsed (differs for each sign type)
- Vehicle drives through a turn
- If no navigation map data is available and speed drops below 52 km/h (city entry detection)
- If navigation map data is available and a city entry/exit was detected due to map data change

Traffic sign detection in conjunction with navigation system

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, the currently displayed sign can either originate from optical sign detection or from the map data.

If the currently displayed sign originates from map data and the map information changes, a new sign will be displayed. This may lead to detection of a new sign although no sign on the road may have been passed.

Fault

Traffic sign assistant may not operate correctly if:

- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- There are adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow, direct sunlight or shadows.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs.
- The navigation map data is outdated.

Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to discern certain traffic signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

The system does not discern any other than the conventional traffic signs that might give or end a speed limit.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Always adapt speed to the road conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.

Lane keep assist

Lane keep assist helps to avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving. If the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn steering wheel in same direction, if system steers not

sufficient. Turn steering wheel gently into opposite direction, if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist starts a visual and acoustic warning.

Unintended lane departure is assumed

- without using turn signal
- using the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane departure
- without braking
- without acceleration
- without active steering.

Note
The system is switched off during detection of ambiguous lane markings, e.g. in construction areas.

Note
The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

Activation

The lane keep assist is activated by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate that the system is switched on.

When the control indicator in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is ready to assist.

The system is operational at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h and 180 km/h and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and the control indicator changes to yellow, if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing together with three chimes, from the respective direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected.

If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.

Lane keep assist detects hands-free driving. In this case a message in the Driver Information Centre pops-up and a chime sounds as long as lane keep assist detects hands-free driving.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing ; the LED in the button extinguishes.

The system is deactivated automatically when a trailer is detected.

Fault

The system performance may be affected by:

- Windscreen not clean or affected by foreign items, e.g. stickers
- Close vehicles ahead
- Banked roads
- Winding or hilly roads
- Road edges
- Roads with poor lane markings
- Sudden lighting changes
- Adverse environmental conditions e.g. heavy rain or snow
- Vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres.

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

⚠ Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle.

The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather etc). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

Using the system while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Switch the system off.

Fuel

Fuel for petrol engines

Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating. A lower octane rating can reduce engine power and torque and slightly increases fuel consumption.

Caution

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 228 or equivalent can lead to deposits or engine damage.

Caution

Use of fuel with a lower octane rating than the lowest possible rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

The engine-specific requirements regarding octane rating are given in the engine data overview ⇨ 287. A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the requirement.

Fuel additive

Fuel should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly. In certain countries fuel does not contain sufficient quantities of additive to keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. In these countries a fuel additive is required for some engines to make up for this lack of detergency. Only use fuel additive approved for the vehicle.

Adding fuel additive to the filled fuel tank is required at least every 15,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. For further information, contact your workshop.

Prohibited fuels

Fuels containing oxygenates such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated fuel, are available in some cities. If these fuels comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. However, E85

(85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must be used only in FlexFuel vehicles.

Caution

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Some fuels, mainly high octane racing fuels, can contain an octane enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Do not use fuels or fuel additives with MMT as they can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator light may illuminate ⇨ 110. If this occurs, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Fuel for diesel engines

Only use diesel fuel that complies with EN 590 and which has a sulphur concentration of max. 10 ppm.

Fuels with a biodiesel (compliant with EN 14214) content of max. 7% by volume may be used (e.g. named B7).

If travelling in countries outside the European Union occasional use of Euro-Diesel fuel with a sulphur concentration below 50 ppm is possible.

Caution

Frequent usage of diesel fuel containing more than 15 ppm sulphur will cause severe engine damage.

Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 590 or similar can lead to engine powerloss, increased wear or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.

Low temperature operation

At temperatures below 0° C, some diesel products with biodiesel blends may clog, freeze or gel, which may affect the fuel supply system. Starting and engine operation may not work properly. Make sure to fill winter grade diesel fuel at ambient temperatures below 0°C.

Arctic grade diesel fuel can be used in extreme cold temperatures below -20° C. Using this fuel grade in warm or hot climates is not recommended

and may cause engine stalling, poor starting or damage on the fuel injection system.

Fuel for natural gas operation

Natural gas is known as CNG (Compressed Natural Gas).

Use natural gas with a methane content of approx. 78 - 99%. L-gas (low) has approx. 78 - 87% and H-gas (high) has approx. 87 - 99%. Biogas with the same methane content can also be used if it has been chemically prepared and desulphurised.

Only use natural gas or biogas that complies with DIN 51624.

Liquid gas or LPG must not be used.

Refuelling

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

A label with symbols at the fuel filler flap is indicating the allowed fuel types. In Europe the pump nozzles of the filling stations are marked with these symbols. Refuel only the allowed fuel type.

Caution

In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at right rear side of the vehicle.

The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

Petrol and Diesel refuelling

To open, turn the cap slowly anticlockwise.

The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

To refuel, switch on pump nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the pump nozzle a maximum of two more times.

Caution

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.

Close the flap and engage.

Misfuel inhibitor

⚠Warning

Do not try to open the flap of the fuel filler neck manually on vehicles with misfuel inhibitor.

Disregarding this could lead to trapping of the fingers.

The misfuel inhibitor ensures that the flap of the fuel filler neck can only be opened by using the suitable fuel nozzle or a funnel for emergency refilling.

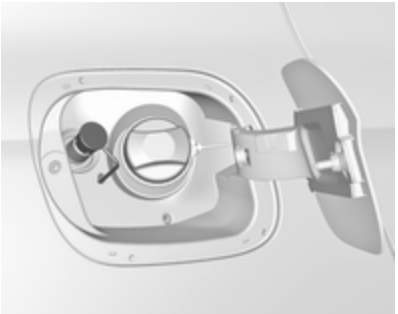
In case of an emergency, refill with a canister. A funnel must be used to open the cap of the filler neck.

The funnel may be stowed in the load compartment or the glovebox.

Place the funnel in straight position to the filler neck and press with slight force to insert.

After topping-up, clean funnel from fuel remains and stow it away.

Natural gas refuelling



The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

⚠ Warning

Refuel only with a maximum output pressure of 250 bar. Use only temperature-compensated filling stations.

The refuelling procedure must be completed, i.e. the filler neck must be vented.

The capacity of the natural gas tank depends on outside temperature, filling pressure, gas composition and type of refuelling system. Capacities ⇨ 294.

Close the flap and allow it to engage.

Terms for "natural gas vehicles" abroad:

German	Erdgasfahrzeuge
English	NGVs = Natural Gas Vehicles
French	Véhicules au gaz naturel - or - Véhicules GNV
Italian	Metano auto

Terms for "natural gas" abroad:

German	Erdgas
English	CNG = Compressed Natural Gas
French	GNV = Gaz Naturel (pour) Véhicules - or - CGN = carburantgaz naturel
Italian	Metano (per auto)

Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps.

Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.

Trailer hitch

General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle. Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage, e.g. in case of four times five watt bulbs, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single five Watt lamp remains or none remain.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle when not in use.

Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

During trailer towing do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. A maximum speed of 100 km/h is only appropriate if an oscillation damper is used and the permissible gross trailer weight does not exceed the vehicle's curb weight.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers, the use of an oscillation damper is strongly recommended.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load ⇨ 295.

Trailer towing

Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to 12%.

The permissible trailer load applies up to the specified incline and at sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 metres of altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ⇨ 282.

Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load (75 kg) is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. Always aim for the maximum load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 40 kg. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 100 km/h applies.

Towing equipment

Caution
When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

Stowage of coupling ball bar

The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed on the rear floor cover in the load compartment.

Place the strap through the rear right lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

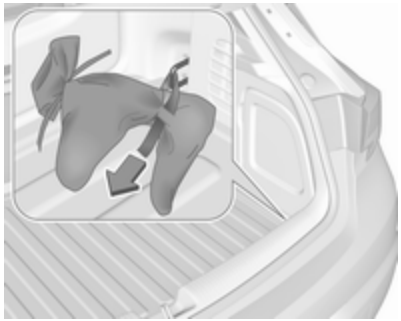


Illustration shows 5-door hatchback.

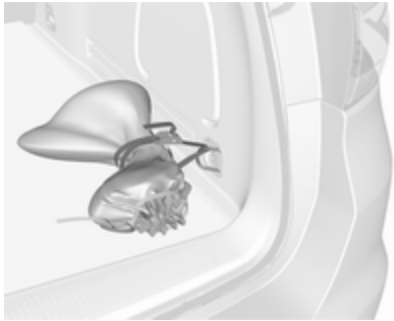
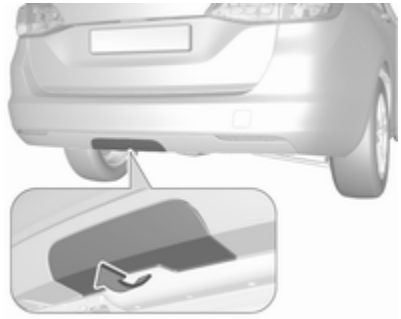
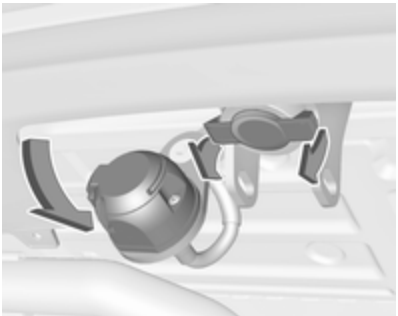


Illustration shows Sports Tourer.

Fitting the coupling ball bar



On Sports Tourer remove cover from rear bumper by pushing.



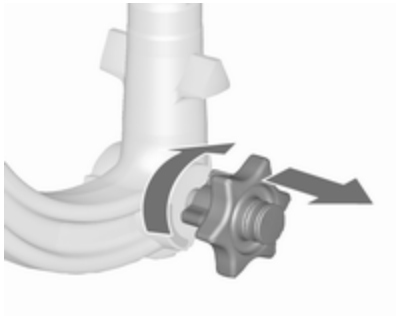
Disengage and fold down the connecting socket. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar

- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in position 🔓.

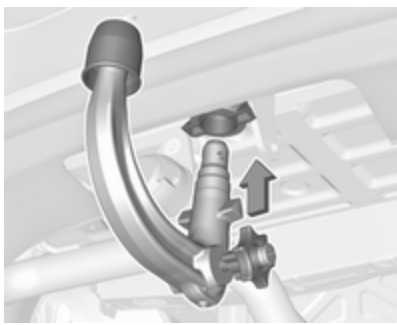
Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning key to position 🔓.



- Pull out rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

Inserting the coupling ball bar



Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

⚠Warning

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position 🔒. Remove the key and close the protective flap.

Eye for break-away stopping cable

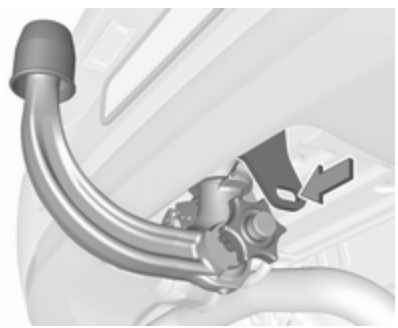


Illustration shows 5-door hatchback.

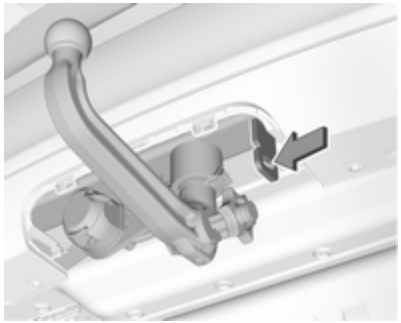


Illustration shows Sports Tourer.

Attach breakaway stopping cable to eye.

Check that the coupling ball bar is correctly installed

- Green marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.
- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

⚠Warning

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

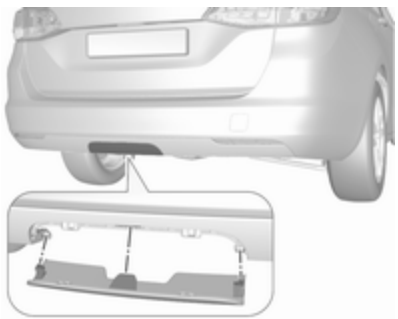
Dismounting the coupling ball bar

Open the protective flap and turn the key to position ⚿ to unlock the coupling ball bar.

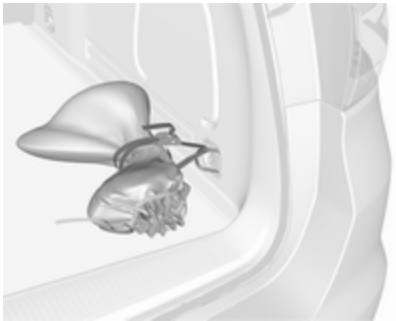
Pull out rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out coupling ball bar downwards.

Insert sealing plug in opening.

Fold away connecting socket.



On Sports Tourer insert cover into rear bumper as shown in the illustration.



Stow the coupling ball bar in the bag and secure by fixing the strap through the rear right lashing eye. Wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

Trailer stability assist

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible.

Trailer stability assist is a function of the Electronic Stability Control ⇨ 182.

Vehicle care

General Information **229**
Accessories and vehicle modifications 229
Vehicle storage 230
End-of-life vehicle recovery 230
Vehicle checks **231**
Performing work 231
Bonnet 231
Engine oil 232
Engine coolant 233
Washer fluid 234
Brakes 234
Brake fluid 234
Vehicle battery 235
Diesel fuel system bleeding 236
Wiper blade replacement 236
Bulb replacement **237**
Halogen headlights 237
Front fog lights 239
Tail lights 240
Side turn lights 246
Number plate light 246
Interior lights 247
Instrument panel illumination ... 247
Electrical system **247**
Fuses 247
Engine compartment fuse box . 248
Instrument panel fuse box 250
Load compartment fuse box 252
Vehicle tools **254**
Tools 254
Wheels and tyres **255**
Winter tyres 255
Tyre designations 256
Tyre pressure 256
Tyre pressure monitoring system 257
Tread depth 261
Changing tyre and wheel size . 262
Wheel covers 262
Tyre chains 262
Tyre repair kit 262
Wheel changing 266
Spare wheel 266
Jump starting **271**
Towing **273**
Towing the vehicle 273
Towing another vehicle 274
Appearance care **275**
Exterior care 275
Interior care 276

General Information

Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Opel. Furthermore, such changes may affect driver assistance systems, may impact fuel consumption, CO_2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the operating permit, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Caution
When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

Vehicle storage

Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

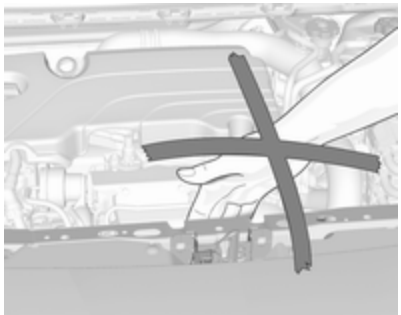
- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

End-of-life vehicle recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.

Vehicle checks

Performing work



⚠ Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.

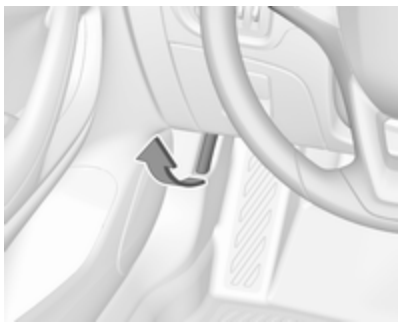
The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

⚠ Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

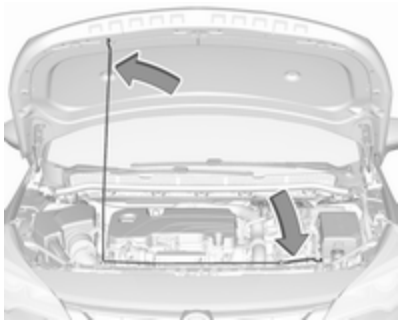
Bonnet

Opening



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.

Move the safety catch sideways to the left vehicle side and open the bonnet.



Secure the bonnet support.

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons.

Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

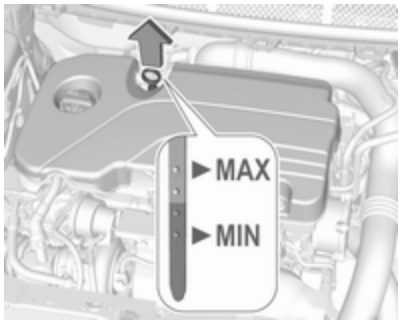
Caution
Do not press the bonnet into the latch to avoid dents.

Engine oil

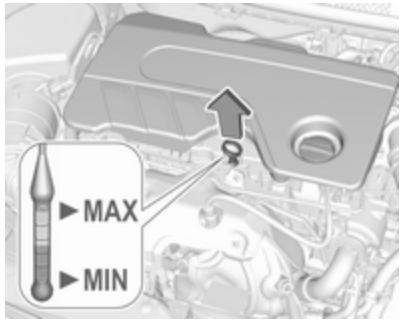
Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used. Recommended fluids and lubricants ⇨ 279.

The maximum engine oil consumption is 0.6 litres per 1000 km.

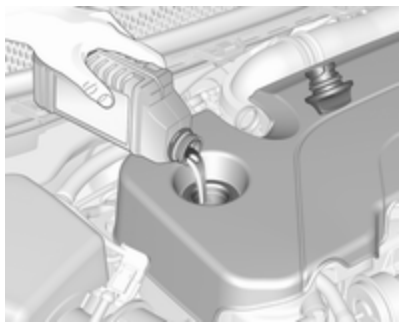
Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least five minutes.



Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, reinsert fully, pull out and read the engine oil level.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.



When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up engine oil.

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

Caution
Wipe off any spilled engine oil immediately.

Caution
Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out. If the oil exceeds the maximum level, do not start the vehicle and contact a workshop.

Capacities ⇨ 294.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

Engine coolant

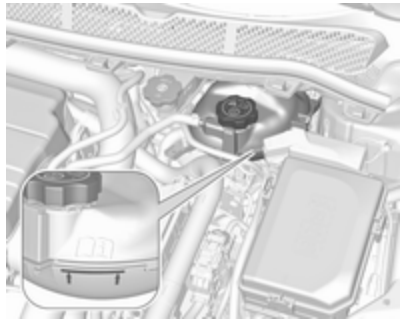
The coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -28 °C. In cold regions with very low temperatures, the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.

Caution
Only use approved antifreeze.

Coolant and antifreeze ⇨ 279.

Coolant level

Caution
Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.



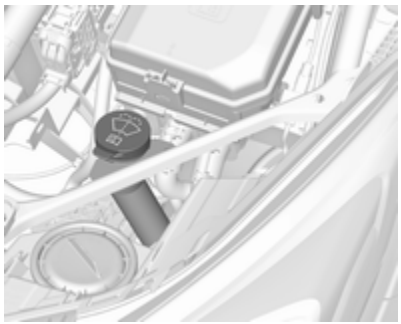
If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.

⚠ Warning
Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of released coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have

the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

Washer fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

Caution
Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Washer fluid ⇨ 279.

Brakes

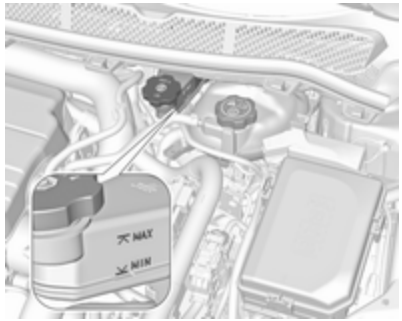
In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

Brake fluid

⚠ Warning
Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.

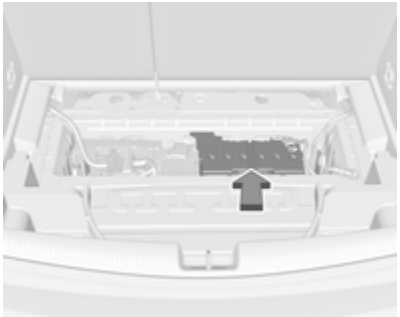


The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake and clutch fluid ⇨ 279.

Vehicle battery



The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment under the rear floor cover behind the rear seats. Rear floor cover ⇨ 82.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment.

Jump starting ⇨ 271.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Battery discharge protection ⇨ 145.

Disconnecting the battery

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: Switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

Replacing the vehicle battery

Note
Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 162.

Charging the vehicle battery

⚠Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

Jump starting ⇨ 271.

Warning label

Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Diesel fuel system bleeding

If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than five seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

Wiper blade replacement

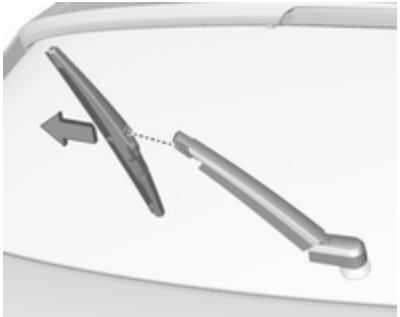
Windscreen

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

Rear window



Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

Bulb replacement

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

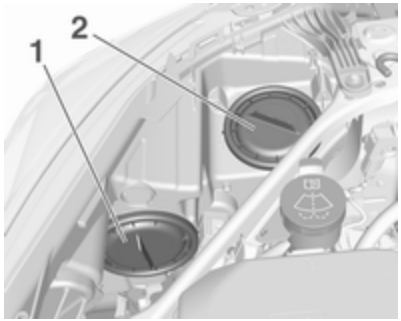
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

Halogen headlights

Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.

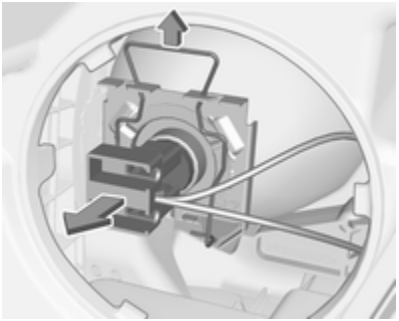


Low beam (**1**) outer bulb.

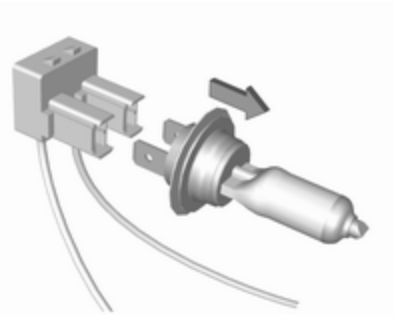
High beam (**2**) inner bulb.

Low beam (1)

1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

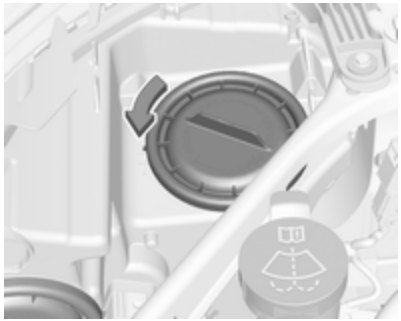


2. Disengage spring clip from retainer by pulling. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.



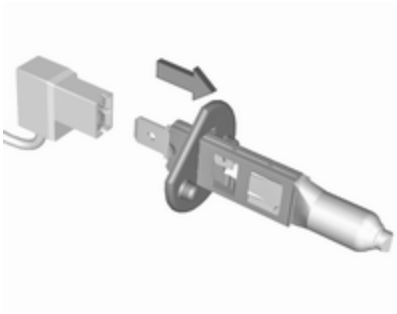
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector housing and rotate clockwise to secure.
5. Push spring clip back in place.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

High beam (2)



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

2. Disengage spring clip from retainer by moving it forward and to the side. Swivel spring clip downwards.
3. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.



4. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
5. Insert the bulb holder and install spring clip.

   Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

Front turn signal light

In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

Side light

In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

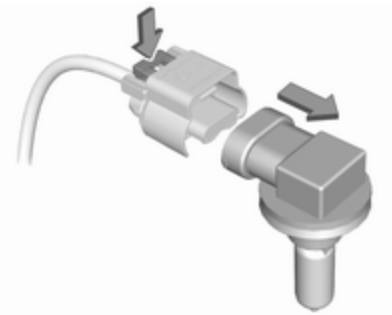
Daytime running light

In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

Front fog lights

The bulbs are accessible from the underside of the vehicle.

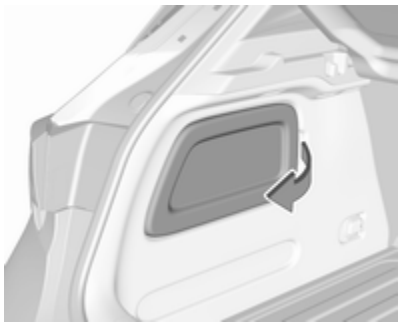
1. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it from the reflector housing.



2. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
3. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb and attach the plug connector.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector housing by turning clockwise and engage.

Tail lights

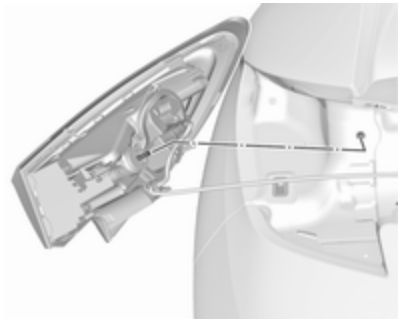
5-door Hatchback



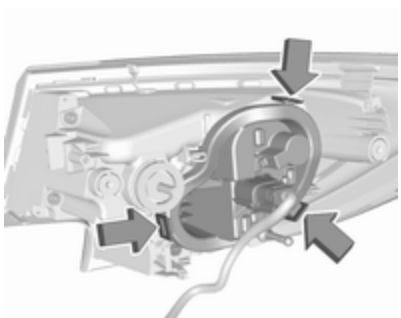
1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.

2. Vehicles with tyre repair kit: To replace bulbs on the right side, first unscrew the plastic nut and take out the insert with the sealant bottle.

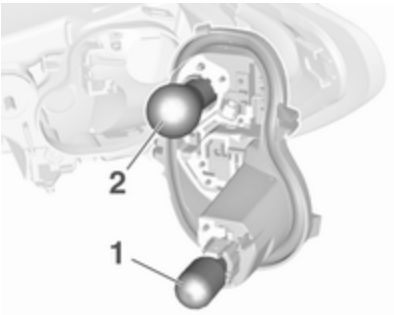
3. Unscrew the plastic securing nut from the inside by hand.



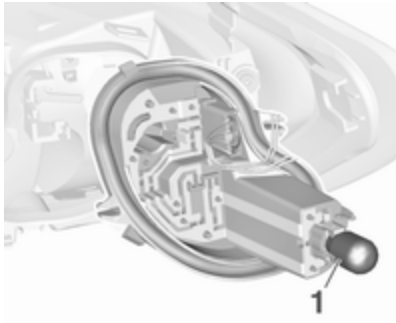
4. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recess and remove.
5. Detach the cable from the retainer.



6. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



7. Remove and replace the bulbs:
   Turn signal light (**1**)
   Tail light/brake light (**2**)



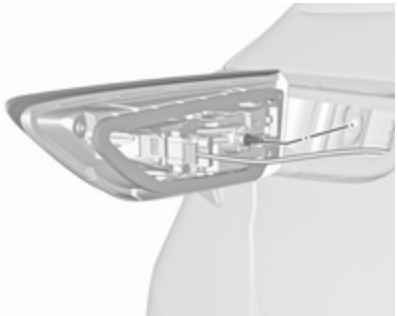
   On version with LED tail lights and LED brake lights, only turn signal light bulb (**1**) can be removed and replaced.
8. Attach the bulb carrier to the light assembly.
9. Attach the cable to the retainer.
10. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nut from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

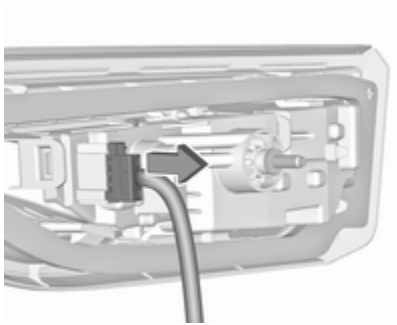
Light assembly in the tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

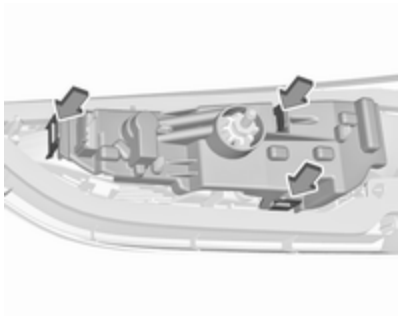
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



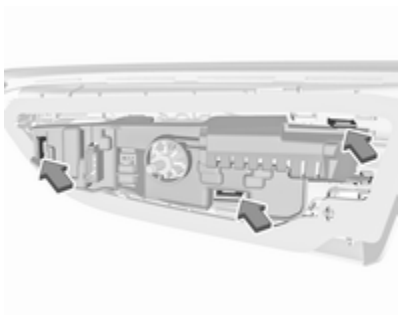
3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.



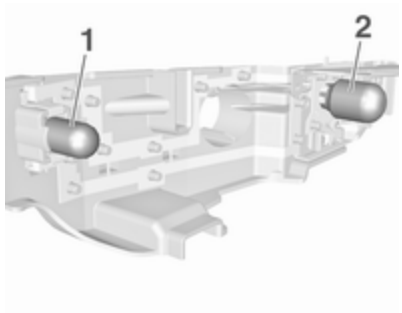
4. Detach the plug from the light assembly.



5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



On version with LED tail lights, the position of the retaining lugs is slightly different.

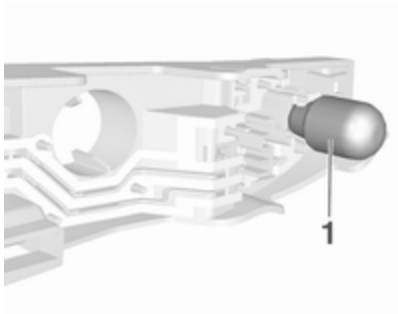


6. Remove and replace the bulb:

   Tail light (**1**)

   Rear fog light (**2**) (left side)

   Reverse light (**2**) (right side)



On version with LED tail lights only reverse light bulb (**1**) can be removed and replaced.

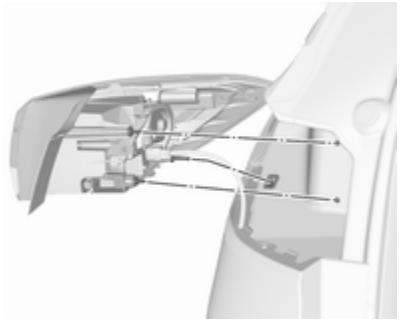
7. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly. Attach plug to the light assembly. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

Sports Tourer

1. Release and open the cover on the respective side.

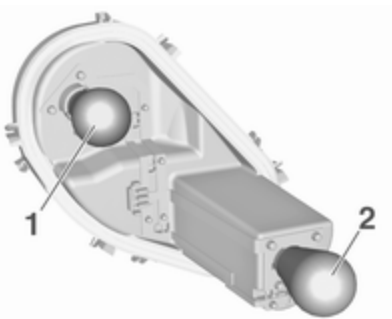
2. Unscrew both plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recess and remove.
4. Detach the cable from the retainer.

5. Standard tail lights:

Release the retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.

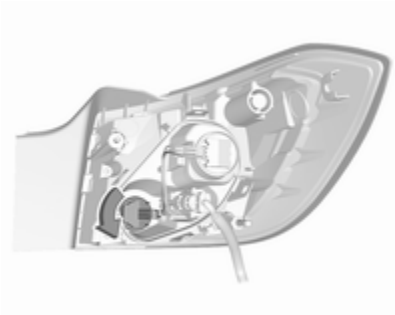


6. Remove and replace the bulbs:

   Tail light/brake light (**1**)

   Turn signal light (**2**)

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the light assembly.
8. LED tail lights:



On version with LED tail lights and LED brake lights, only turn signal light bulb can be replaced: remove bulb holder in the light assembly by turning. Replace bulb in the bulb holder.

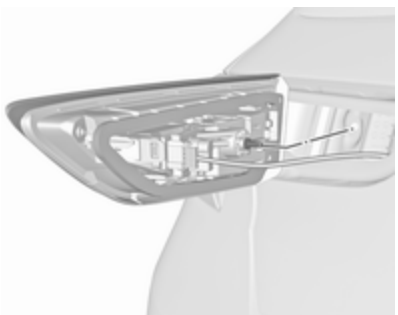
9. Attach the cable to the retainer.
10. Attach the light assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights and brake lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

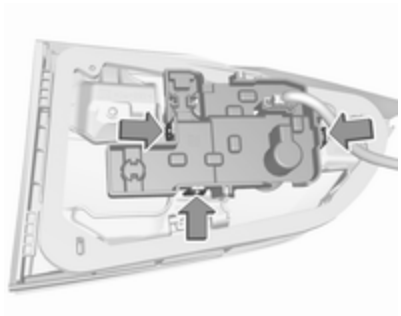
Light assembly in the tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

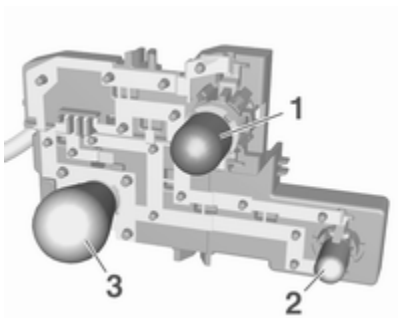
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.



4. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



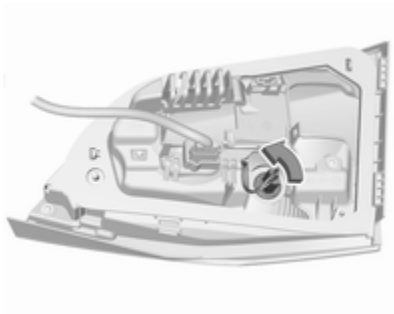
5. Remove and replace the bulb:

   Reverse light (**1**)

   Tail light (**2**)

   Rear fog light (**3**) (left side)

6. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly.

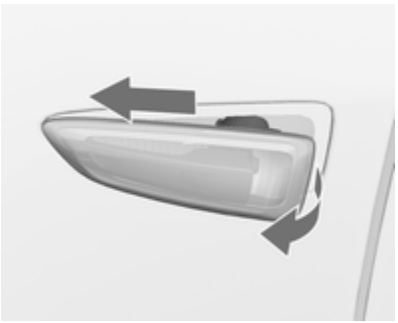


7. On version with LED tail lights only reverse light bulb can be replaced: remove bulb holder in the light assembly by turning. Replace bulb in the bulb holder.
8. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the securing nut from the inside. Attach cover.

Depending on the version, tail lights are designed as LEDs. In case of failure, have LEDs replaced by a workshop.

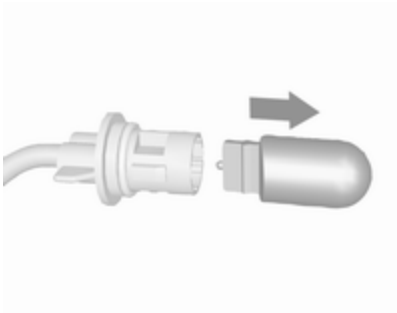
Side turn lights

To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:



1. Slide lamp to its left side and remove with its right end.

2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.

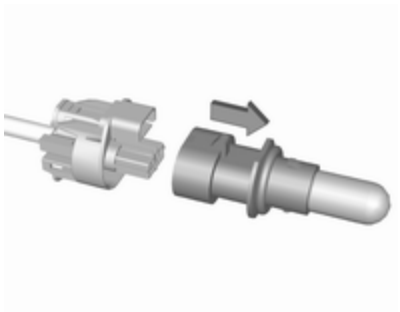


3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

Number plate light

1. Insert screwdriver in recess of the cover, press to the side and release spring.

2. Remove lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
3. Remove bulb holder from lamp housing by turning anticlockwise.



4. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
5. Insert bulb holder into lamp housing and turn clockwise.
6. Insert lamp into bumper and let engage.

Some versions have LED number plate lights. In case of defective LEDs, have them replaced by a workshop.

Interior lights

Courtesy light, reading lights

Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

Load compartment light

Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

Instrument panel illumination

Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

Electrical system

Fuses

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

There are three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

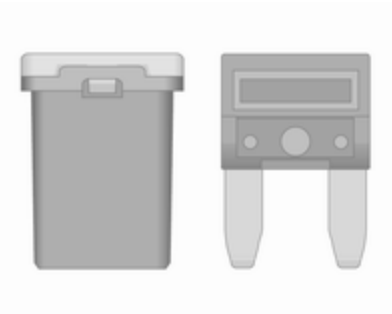
- engine compartment
- instrument panel
- load compartment

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognized by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

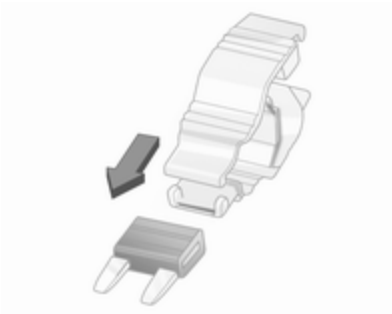
Some functions are protected by several fuses.

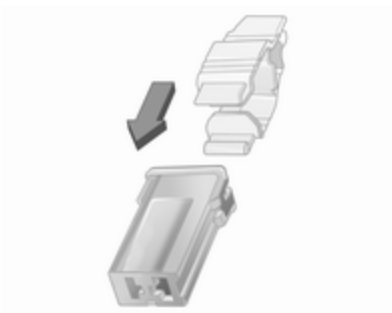
Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.



Fuse extractor

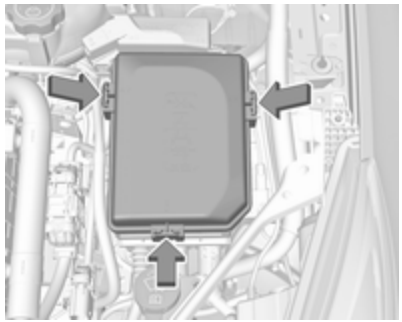
A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.





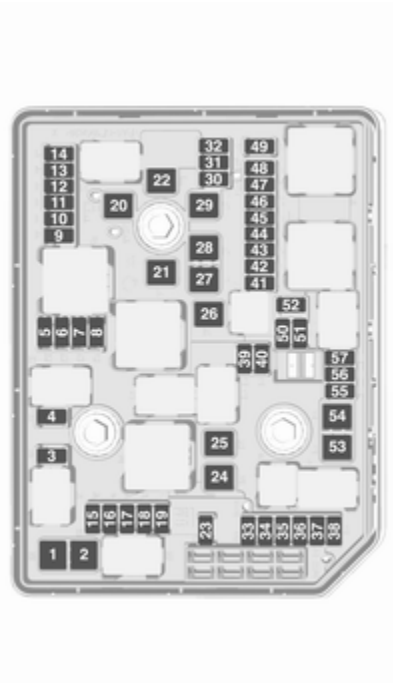
Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

Engine compartment fuse box



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover and remove it.



No.	Circuit
1	Starter
2	Starter
3	Exhaust sensor
4	Engine control module
5	Engine functions/Aeroshutter
6	Transmission control module
7	Forward collision alert / Adaptive Cruise Control
8	Engine control module
9	Climate control system
10	Diesel exhaust system
11	Tailgate locking system, Transmission
12	Seat lumbar massage
13	After boil pump
14	Diesel exhaust system
15	Exhaust sensor
16	Fuel injection

No.	Circuit
17	Fuel injection
18	Diesel exhaust system
19	Diesel exhaust system
20	–
21	–
22	ABS
23	Washer system for windscreen and rear window
24	Washer Headlamp
25	Diesel fuel heating
26	Transmission control module
27	Power tailgate module
28	–
29	Heated rear window
30	Mirror defrost
31	Anti theft warning module

No.	Circuit
32	DC transformer/LED display/ Electrical heater/Climate control/Glow plug controller
33	Anti theft warning horn
34	Horn
35	Power outlet load compartment
36	Right high beam (Halogen)/ Right low beam (LED)
37	Left high beam (Halogen)
38	LED headlight/Automatic head-light range adjustment
39	Front fog light
40	Central Gateway Module
41	Water in fuel sensor/Water pump
42	Manual headlight range adjust-ment
43	Fuel pump
44	Rear view camera/Inside rear view mirror/Trailer module
45	LED headlight left/Automatic headlight range adjustment left
46	Instrument cluster
47	Steering column lock
48	Rear wiper
49	Outside rearview mirror
50	LED headlight right/Automatic headlight range adjustment right
51	Left low beam (LED)
52	Engine control module/Trans-mission control module
53	Diesel exhaust system
54	Windscreen wiper
55	Electrical rear seat folding
56	–
57	–

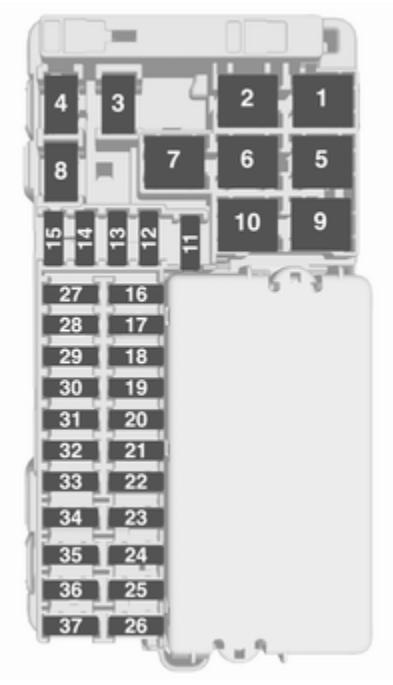
After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, malfunction may occur.

Instrument panel fuse box

The fuse box is located behind a cover.

Pull the cover on the left side to remove.



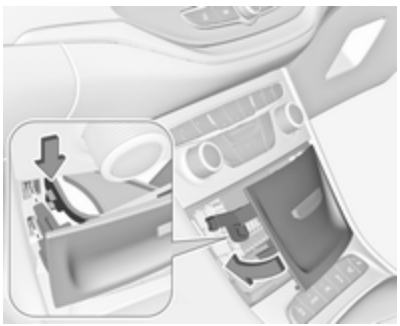
No.	Circuit
1	Rear seat heating (only for vehicles without alarm horn)
2	Climate control system, fan
3	Power seat driver side
4	Power seat passenger side
5	–
6	Power window front
7	ABS
8	Heated steering wheel
9	Body control module 8
10	Power window rear
11	Sunroof
12	Body control module 4
13	Seat heating (only on vehicles without alarm horn)
14	Exterior mirror
15	Body control module 1
16	Body control module 7

No.	Circuit
17	Body control module 6
18	Body control module 3
19	Data link connector
20	Airbag system
21	Climate control system
22	Central locking system, tailgate
23	Electronic key system
24	Power seat memory function
25	Airbag system steering wheel
26	Ignition switch/Steering column lock
27	Body control module 2
28	USB socket
29	Cigarette lighter/Power outlet front
30	Selector lever
31	Rear window wiper
32	Transmission control module

No.	Circuit
33	Anti-theft alarm system/Power sounder
34	Parking assist/Side blind spot alert/Infotainment system/USB socket
35	OnStar
36	Info display/Instrument cluster/ CD player
37	Infotainment system, radio

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover:

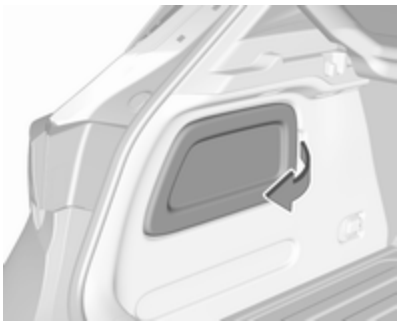
1. Apply the cover on the right side.



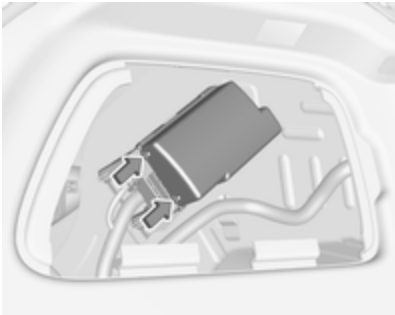
2. Fold the left side of the cover forwards. Take care that the securing clamp is guided as shown in the illustration.

Load compartment fuse box

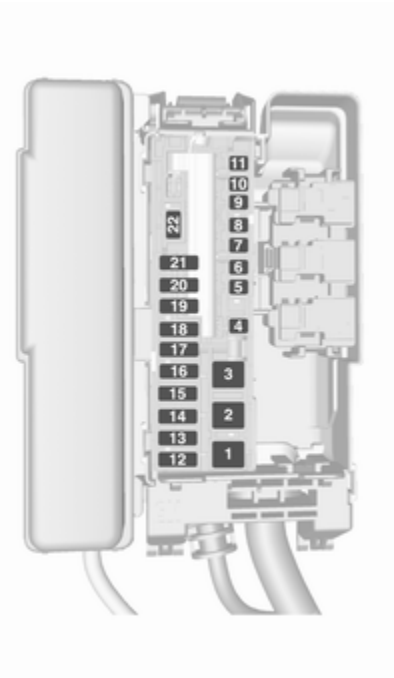
The fuse box is located on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.



Remove the cover.



Disengage the fuse box cover and remove it.

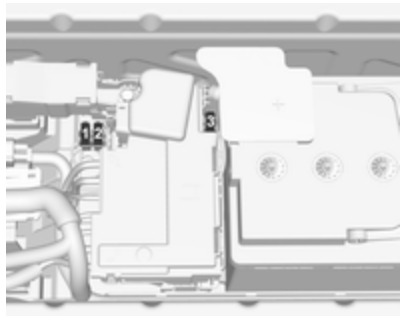


No.	Circuit
1	–
2	–
3	Trailer module
4	–
5	–
6	–
7	–
8	–
9	–
10	Service
11	–
12	Front seat heating (on vehicles with alarm horn)
13	Rear seat heating (on vehicles with alarm horn)
14	Ignition
15	Seat ventilation
16	Trailer outlet

No.	Circuit
17	Trailer outlet
18	–
19	–
20	–
21	–
22	–

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

Additional fuses are located near the vehicle battery.



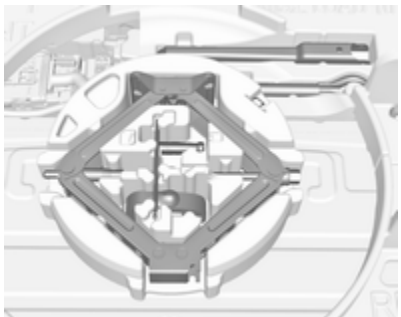
No.	Circuit
1	Fuel pump
2	Engine control module
3	Power supply

Vehicle tools

Tools

5-door hatchback with spare wheel

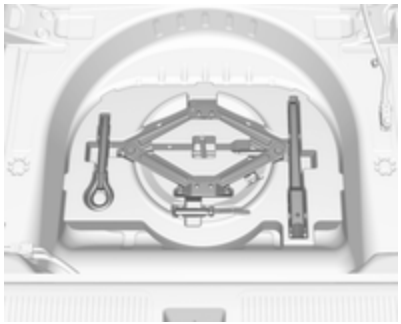
Open the floor cover of the load compartment ⇨ 82.



The jack, the towing eye, a strap for securing a damaged wheel and the tools are located in the tool box below the spare wheel. Spare wheel ⇨ 266.

Sports Tourer with spare wheel

Open the floor cover of the load compartment ⇨ 82.



The jack, the towing eye and the tools are located in the tool box below the spare wheel. Spare wheel ⇨ 266.

5-door hatchback without spare wheel

Open the cover in the right side wall of the load compartment.

Some tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a tool box.

Sports Tourer without spare wheel

Open the cover on the right side of the load compartment.

The tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a suitcase.

Wheels and tyres

Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

All tyre sizes are permitted as winter tyres ⇨ 295.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.

Tyre designations

E.g. **215/50 R 16 95 H**

215 : Tyre width, mm
50 : Cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
R : Belt type: Radial
RF : Type: RunFlat
16 : Wheel diameter, inches
95 : Load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
H : Speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q : up to 160 km/h
S : up to 180 km/h
T : up to 190 km/h
H : up to 210 km/h
V : up to 240 km/h
W : up to 270 km/h

Choose a tyre appropriate for the maximum speed of your vehicle.

The maximum speed is achievable at kerb weight with driver (75 kg) plus 125 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the maximum speed of the vehicle.

Performance ⇨ 289.

Tyre pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel.

This also applies to vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system.

Tyre pressure ⇨ 295.

The tyre pressure information label on the left door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options.

For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

- Identify the engine identifier code. Engine data ⇨ 287.
- Identify the respective tyre.
- The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations ⇨ 295.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

⚠ Warning

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

⚠ Warning

For specific tyres the recommended tyre pressure as shown in the tyre pressure table may exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure as indicated on the tyre.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition.

Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase. Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C.

The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a 10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

The tyre pressure value displayed in the Driver Information Centre shows the real tyre pressure. A cooled down tyre will show a decreased value, which does not indicate an air leak.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system checks the pressure of all four tyres once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

Caution

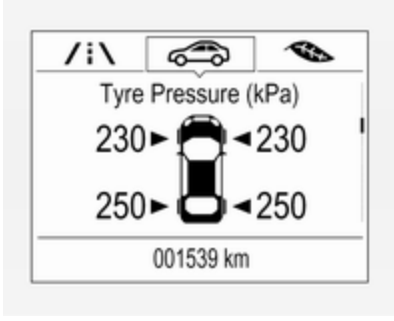
Tyre pressure monitoring system warns only about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tyres must have the prescribed pressure.

Note
In countries where the tyre pressure monitoring system is legally required, the use of wheels without pressure sensors will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

The current tyre pressures can be shown in the Driver Information Centre.

Midlevel display:



Select the **Tyre pressure** page under the **Vehicle Information Menu** in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.

Uplevel display:

Select the **Tyre pressure** page under the **Info** Menu in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.

System status and pressure warnings are displayed by a message indicating the corresponding tyre in the Driver Information Centre.

The system considers the tyre temperature for the warnings.

Temperature dependency ⇨ 256.

A detected low tyre pressure condition is indicated by the control indicator (!) ⇨ 112.

If (!) illuminates, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres as recommended ⇨ 295.

If (!) flashes for 60-90 seconds then illuminates continuously, there is a fault in the system. Consult a workshop.

After inflating, some driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the Driver Information Centre. During this time (!) may illuminate.

If (!) illuminates at lower temperatures and extinguishes after driving, this could be an indicator for approaching a low tyre pressure condition. Check tyre pressure.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 123.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased, switch off ignition.

Only mount wheels with pressure sensors, otherwise the tyre pressure will not be displayed and (!) illuminates continuously.

A spare wheel or temporary spare wheel is not equipped with pressure sensors. The tyre pressure monitoring system is not operational for these tyres. Control indicator (!) illuminates. For the further three tyres, the system remains operational.

The use of commercially-available liquid tyre repair kits can impair the function of the system. Factory-approved repair kits can be used.

Operating electronic devices or being close to facilities using similar wave frequencies could disrupt the tyre pressure monitoring system.

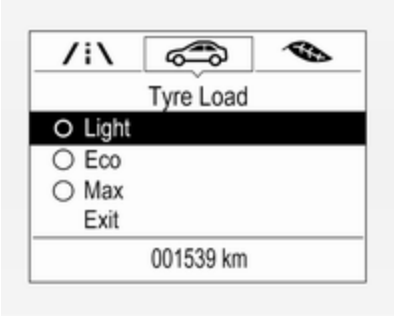
Each time the tyres are replaced, tyre pressure monitoring system sensors must be dismounted and serviced. For the screwed sensor, replace valve core and sealing ring. For the clipped sensor, replace complete valve stem.

Vehicle loading status

Adjust tyre pressure to load condition according to the tyre information label or tyre pressure chart ⇨ 295, and select the appropriate setting in the menu **Tyre Load** in the Driver Information Centre, **Vehicle Information Menu** ⇨ 115. This setting is the reference for the tyre pressure warnings.

The **Tyre load** menu only appears when the vehicle is at a standstill and the parking brake is applied. On vehicles with automatic transmission the selector lever must be in **P**.

Midlevel display:

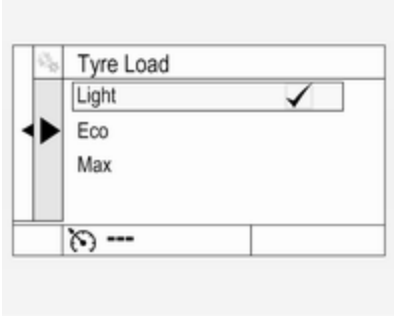


Select the **Tyre load** page under the **Vehicle Information Menu** in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.

Select

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to three people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to three people.
- **Max** for full loading.

Uplevel display:



Select the **Tyre load** page under the **Options** Menu in the Driver Information Centre ⇨ 115.

Select

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to three people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to three people.
- **Max** for full loading.

Tyre pressure sensor matching process

Each tyre pressure sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code must be matched to a new wheel position after rotating the wheels or exchanging the complete wheel set and if one or more tyre pressure sensors were replaced. The tyre pressure sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare wheel with a road wheel containing the tyre pressure sensor.

The malfunction light ⓘ and the warning message or code should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the wheel positions, using a relearn tool, in the following order: left side front wheel, right side front wheel, right side rear

wheel and left side rear wheel. The turn signal light at the current active position is illuminated until sensor is matched.

Consult a workshop for service. There are two minutes to match the first wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The tyre pressure sensor matching process is:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. On vehicles with automatic transmission: set the selector lever to **P**.

   On vehicles with manual transmission: select neutral.
4. Midlevel display:

   Use **MENU** on the turn signal lever to select the **Vehicle Information Menu** in the Driver Information Centre.

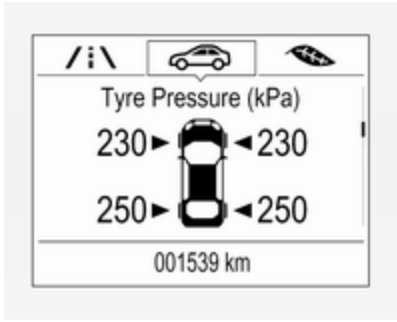
   Uplevel display:

   Press < on the steering wheel to open main menu page.

   Select the **Info** page with ∧ or ∨.

   Confirm with ✔.
5. Select the tyre pressure menu.

   Midlevel display:



   Uplevel display:

6. Midlevel display:

   Press **SET/CLR** to begin the sensor matching process. A message requesting acceptance of the process should be displayed.

   Press **SET/CLR** again to confirm the selection. The horn sounds twice to indicate that the receiver is in relearn mode.

   Uplevel display:

   Press ✔ to begin the sensor matching process. The horn sounds twice to indicate that the receiver is in relearn mode.
7. Start with the left side front wheel.

8. Place the relearn tool against the tyre sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the tyre pressure sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this wheel position.
9. Proceed to the right side front wheel, and repeat the procedure in step 8.
10. Proceed to the right side rear wheel, and repeat the procedure in step 8.
11. Proceed to the left side rear wheel, and repeat the procedure in step 8. The horn sounds twice to indicate that the sensor identification code has been matched to the left side rear wheel, and the tyre pressure sensor matching process is no longer active.
12. Turn off the ignition.
13. Set all four tyres to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the tyre pressure information label.
14. Ensure the tyre loading status is set according to the selected pressure ⇨ 115.

Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).

For safety reasons it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.

The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels remains the same.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every six years.

Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced and the tyre pressure monitoring system reinitialised. ⇨ 257

⚠Warning

The use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle operating permit.

Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

⚠Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Tyre chains

Tyre chains are only permitted on the front wheels.

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

⚠Warning

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 195/65 R15, 205/55 R16 and 215/55 R16.

Temporary spare wheel

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre repair kit

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.

Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

⚠ Warning

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.

Do not use for a lengthy period.

Steering and handling may be affected.

If you have a flat tyre:

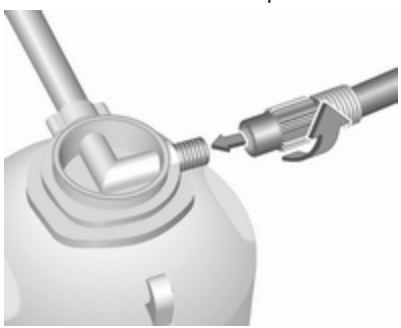
Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.

On 5-door hatchback the tyre repair kit is on the right side in the load compartment behind a cover.

On Sports Tourer the tyre repair kit is in a suitcase on the right side of the load compartment behind a cover. The suitcase is secured with a strap.

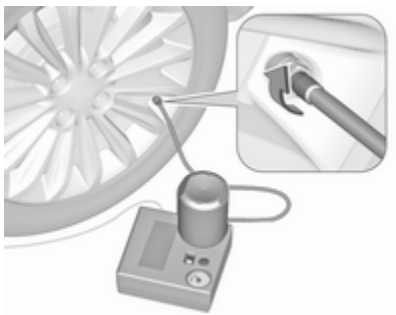
1. Remove the sealant bottle.
2. Insert thumb into the opening and pull out the compressor.

3. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the stowage compartments on the underside of the compressor.



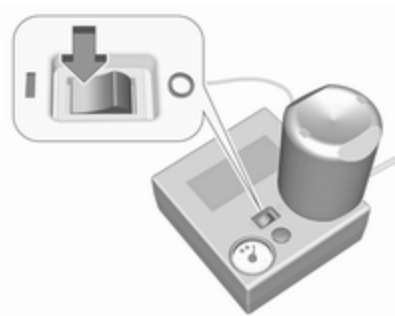
4. Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.
5. Fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor.

   Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.



6. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.
7. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
8. The switch on the compressor must be set to O.
9. Connect the compressor plug to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

   To avoid discharging the battery, we recommend running the engine.



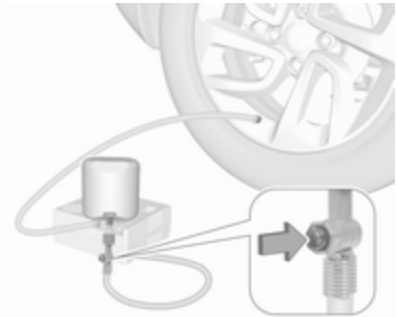
10. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tyre is filled with sealant.
11. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 bar whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 s). Then the pressure starts to drop.
12. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is inflated.
13. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 min.

    Tyre pressure ⇨ 295.

    When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.

    If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 min, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 min. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

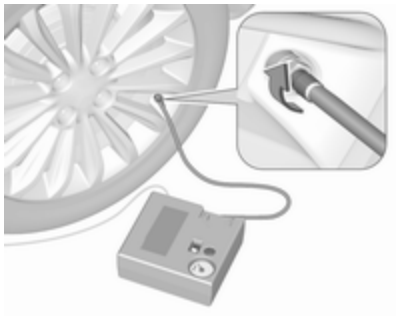
Drain excess tyre pressure with the button over the pressure indicator.



Depending on version the button can be located on the air hose.

Do not run the compressor longer than 10 min.

14. Detach the tyre repair kit. Push catch on bracket to remove sealant bottle from bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.
15. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
16. Take the label indicating maximum permitted speed from the sealant bottle and affix in the driver's field of view.
17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. After driving approx. 10 km (but no more than 10 min), stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve and compressor when doing this.



If tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar, set it to the correct value. Repeat the procedure until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 bar, the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.

Note

The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 min.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 7 bar.

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

The adapters possibly supplied can be used to pump up other items e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable

dinghies etc. They can be located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

Wheel changing

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

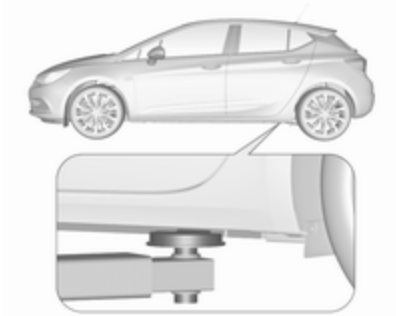
- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

⚠ Warning

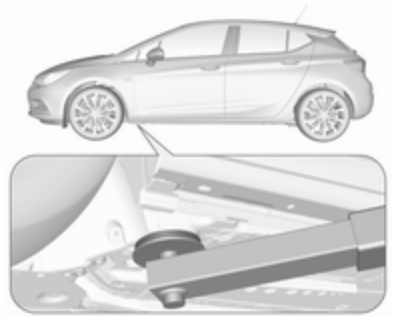
Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

Jacking positions

The jacking positions shown refer to the use of lifting arms and accessory jacks used for changing winter / summer tyres.



Rear arm position of the lifting platform centrically under the rear recess of the sill.



Front arm position of the lifting platform centrically at the underbody.

Spare wheel

The spare wheel can be classified as a temporary spare wheel depending on the size compared to the other mounted wheels and country regulations. In this case a permissible maximum speed applies, even though no label at the spare wheel indicates this.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

Caution

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover ⇨ 82.

2. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Unscrew nut and take out the spare wheel.

   Under the spare wheel there is the box with vehicle tools.
3. When, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, secure the tool box by tightening the wing nut as far as it will go and close floor cover.
4. After wheel change back to full size wheel, place the spare wheel outside up in the well and secure with the wing nut.

Fitting the spare wheel

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.
- Remove the spare wheel.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.

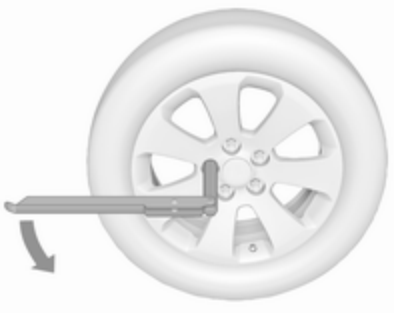
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

⚠Warning

Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

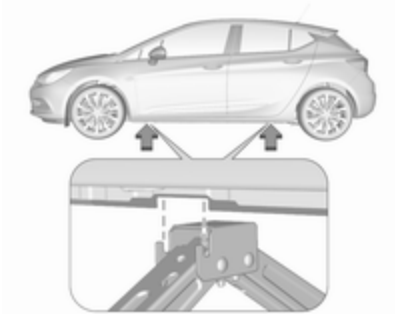
1. Steel wheels with cover: Pull off the wheel cover.

   Alloy wheels: Disengage wheel nut caps with a slot screwdriver and remove. To protect the wheel paint and the cap, wrap a cloth around the screwdriver tip ⇨ 254.

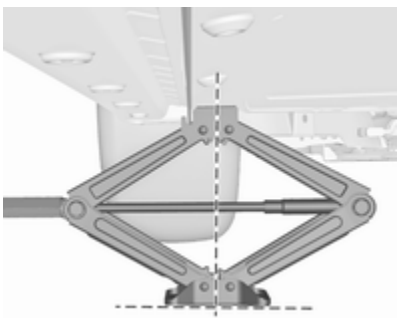


2. Fold out the wheel wrench and install ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

   The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts, first attach the adapter for the locking wheel nuts onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the glovebox.

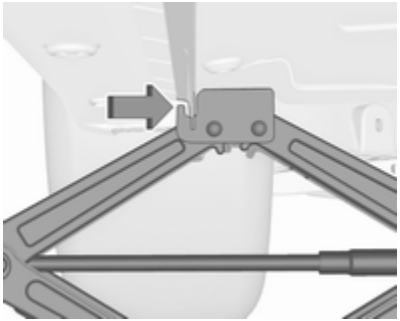


3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



4. Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below

the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure that the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.

Attach wheel wrench and with the jack correctly aligned rotate wheel wrench until wheel is clear of the ground. Do not raise the jack any further.

5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it is located securely and tighten each nut in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 140 Nm.
10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.

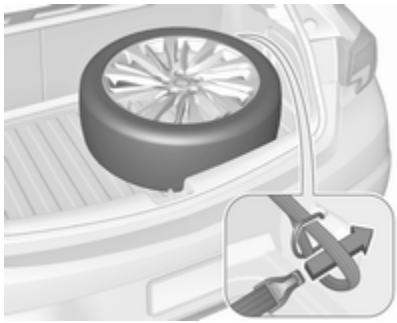
    Install wheel nut caps.
11. Stow and secure the replaced wheel and the vehicle tools ⇨ 254.
12. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.

Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, 5-door hatchback

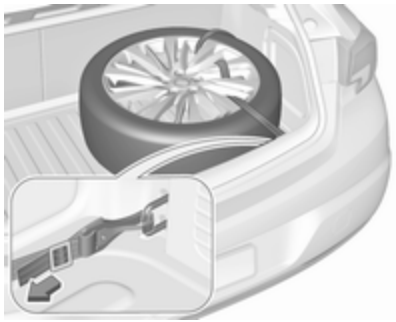
The spare wheel well is not designed for other tyre sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured with a strap. Vehicle tools ⇨ 254. To secure the wheel:

1. Position the wheel outside up close to one sidewall of the load compartment.



2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front lashing eye on the appropriate side.

3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the lashing eye.



4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown in the illustration.
5. Mount the hook to the rear lashing eye.
6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

⚠ Danger

Always drive with folded up and engaged rear seat backrests when stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment.

⚠ Warning

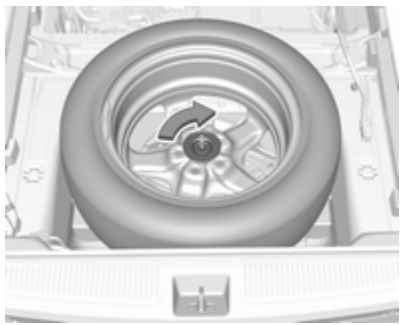
Storing a jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not fixed properly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

Always store jack and tools in the respective storage compartments and secure them by fixing.

Damaged wheel placed in the load compartment must always be secured with the strap.

Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, Sports Tourer

All permitted wheel sizes can be stowed in the spare wheel well. To secure the wheel:



1. Remove centre cap with the brand emblem by pushing from the inside.
2. Position the wheel outside down in the wheel well.

3. Secure the defective wheel with the wing nut.
4. Depending on the tyre size, the floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.

Spare wheel with directional tyre

If possible, fit directional tyres such that they roll in the direction of travel. The rolling direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

The following applies to tyres fitted opposing the rolling direction:

- Driveability may be affected. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible and fit it instead of the spare wheel.
- Drive particularly carefully on wet and snow-covered road surfaces.

Jump starting

The vehicle battery is located in the load compartment under a cover. There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Do not start with quick charger.

⚠Warning

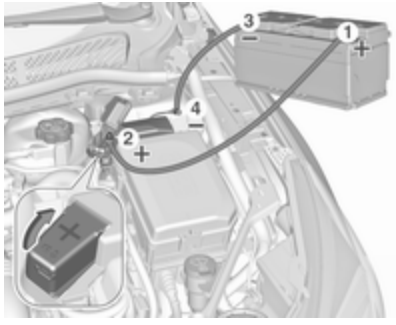
Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

⚠Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.
- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen vehicle battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a vehicle battery.
- Use a booster vehicle battery with the same voltage (12 Volt). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm^2 (25 mm^2 for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.

- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.
- Open the positive terminal protection cap of your vehicle in the engine compartment and of the booster vehicle battery.



Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of your vehicle near the fuse box in the engine compartment.
3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

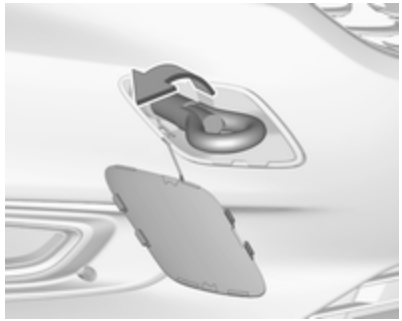
1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Towing

Towing the vehicle

Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 254.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Caution

Deactivate the driver assistance systems like active emergency braking ⇨ 198, otherwise the vehicle may automatically brake during towing.

Switch the selector lever to neutral.

Release the parking brake.

Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 80 km/h nor further than 100 km. In all other cases

and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Vehicles with manual transmission automated: the vehicle must only be towed facing forwards with the front axle raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

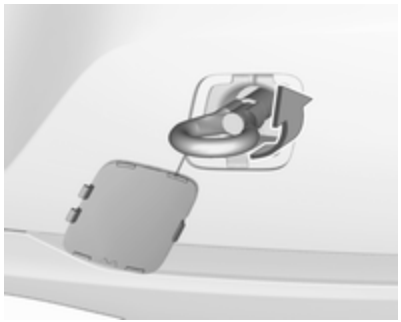
After towing, unscrew the towing eye.

Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

Towing another vehicle

Wrap a cloth around the tip of a flat screwdriver to prevent paint damage. Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower bend of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 254.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or even better a tow bar – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution
Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye.

Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

Appearance care

Exterior care

Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

Caution
Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of four to nine. Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

Polishing and waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads). Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and windscreen wiper blades

Switch off wipers before handling in their areas.

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Remove dirt residues from smearing wiper blades by using a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

Sunroof

Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the sunroof.

Wheels and tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

Paintwork damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

Underbody

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen/rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

Towing equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Air shutter

Clean the shutter system in the front bumper to maintain correct functionality.

Interior care

Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

Caution

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Service and maintenance

General information **278**
Service information 278
Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts **279**
Recommended fluids and lubricants 279

General information

Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Service display ⇨ 107.

European service intervals

Maintenance of your vehicle except CNG (natural gas) is required every 30,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. Maintenance of your vehicle with CNG is required every 15,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. Additional engine oil and filter change is indicated by the engine oil life system, when required earlier than maintenance.

A shorter service interval can be valid for severe driving behaviour, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles.

The European service intervals are valid for the following countries:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Greenland, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macedonia, Malta, Monaco, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, San Marino, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom.

Service display ⇨ 107.

International service intervals

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 15,000 km or after one year, whichever occurs first. Additional engine oil and filter change is indicated by the engine oil life system, when required earlier than maintenance.

Severe operating conditions exist if one or more of the following circumstances occur frequently: Cold starting, stop and go operation, trailer operation, mountain driving, driving on poor and sandy road surfaces, increased air pollution, presence of airborne sand and high dust content, driving at high altitude and large variations of temperature. Under these severe operating conditions, certain service work may be required more frequently than the regular service interval.

The international service intervals are valid for the countries which are not listed in the European service intervals.

Service display ⇨ 107.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and warranty booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and warranty booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications.

⚠ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Dexos is the newest engine oil quality that provides optimum protection for gasoline and diesel engines. If it is unavailable, engine oils of other listed qualities have to be used. Recommendations for gasoline engines are also valid for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG), Liquified Petroleum Gas (LPG) and Ethanol (E85) fuelled engines.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 284.

Topping up engine oil

Caution
In case of any spilled oil, wipe it up and dispose it properly.

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oils for all petrol engines with only ACEA quality is prohibited, since it can cause engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 284.

Additional engine oil additives

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine oil viscosity grades

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.

Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 284.

All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

Coolant and antifreeze

Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In northern countries with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round. The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

Washer fluid

Use only washer fluid approved for the vehicle to prevent damage of wiper blades, paintwork, plastic and rubber parts. Consult a workshop.

Brake and clutch fluid

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Technical data

Vehicle identification **282**
Vehicle Identification Number .. 282
Identification plate 282
Engine identification 283
Vehicle data **284**
Recommended fluids and lubricants 284
Engine data 287
Performance 289
Vehicle weight 291
Vehicle dimensions 293
Capacities 294
Tyre pressures 295

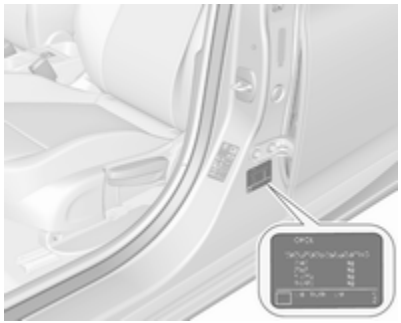
Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Number

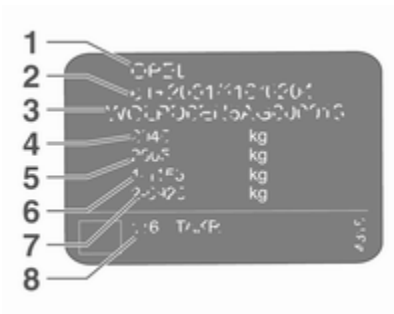
The Vehicle Identification Number may be stamped on the identification plate and on the floor pan, under the floor covering, visible under a cover.

The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

Identification plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame.



Information on identification label:

1 : manufacturer
2 : type approval number
3 : vehicle identification number
4 : permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
5 : permissible gross train weight in kg
6 : maximum permissible front axle load in kg
7 : maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
8 : vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight. For example, if the front axle is bearing its maximum permissible load, the rear axle can only bear a load that is equal to the gross vehicle weight minus the front axle load.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

Engine identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code. Engine data ⇨ 287.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

Vehicle data

Recommended fluids and lubricants

European service schedule

Required engine oil quality

	All European countries with European service interval ⇨ 278	
Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
dexos1 Gen2	✓	–
dexos2	–	✓

Diesel engines only: In case dexos quality is unavailable, you may use max. one litre engine oil quality ACEA C3 once between each oil change.

Engine oil viscosity grades

	All European countries with European service interval ⇨ 278
Ambient temperature	Petrol and diesel engines
down to -25 °C	SAE 0W-20 or SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40
	SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40
below -25 °C	SAE 0W-20 or SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40

International service schedule

Required engine oil quality

	All countries with international service interval ⇨ 278	
Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
dexos1 Gen2	✓	–
dexos2	–	✓

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use the oil qualities listed below:

	All countries with international service interval ⇨ 278	
Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
ACEA A3/B4	–	✓
ACEA C3	–	✓

Engine oil viscosity grades

	All countries with international service interval ⇨ 278
Ambient temperature	Petrol and diesel engines
down to -25 °C	SAE 0W-20 or SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40
	SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40

	All countries with international service interval ➪ 278
below -25 °C	SAE 0W-20 or SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40
down to -20 °C	SAE 10W-30[1] or SAE 10W-40[1]

[1] Permitted, but usage of oil with dexos quality is recommended.

Engine data

Engine identifier code	D10XFL	D10XFL	D14XFL	B14XFT / D14XFT	D14XNT	D16SHT
Sales designation	1.0	1.0	1.4	1.4	1.4 CNG	1.6
Engineering code	D10XFT	D10XFT	D14XFT	B14XFT	D14XNT	D16SHT
Piston displacement [cm^3]	999	999	1399	1399	1399	1598
Engine power [kW]	77 / 66[2)]		92	110	81	147
at rpm	3700-6000		4000-5600	5000-5600	5600	5500
Torque [Nm]	170		245/230[3)]	245/230[3)]	200	280
at rpm	1800-4300		2000-3500	2000-4000	2000-3600	1650-5000
Fuel type	Petrol		Petrol	Petrol	Natural gas/Petrol	Petrol
Octane rating RON[4)]						
recommended	95		95	95	95	98
possible	98		98	98	98	95
possible	91		91	91	91	91
Additional fuel type	–		–	–	Natural gas (CNG)	–

2) Ecotec version
3) With Stop-start system.
4) A country-specific label at the fuel filler flap can supersede the engine-specific requirement.

Engine identifier code	**D16DTN**	**D16DTI**	**D16DTR**	**D16DTH**
Sales designation	**1.6**	**1.6**	**1.6**	**1.6**
Engineering code	**D16DTN**	**D16DTI**	**B16DTR**	**D16DTH**
Piston displacement [cm^3]	1598	1598	1598	1598
Engine power [kW]	110	81	110	100
at rpm	3500	3500	4000	3500-4000
Torque [Nm]	300	300	350	320
at rpm	1750-2000	1750-2000	1500-2250	2000-2250
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel

Performance

5-door Hatchback

Engine	D10XFL	D14XFL	B14XFT / D14XFT	D14XNT CNG	D16SHT
Maximum speed [km/h]					
Manual transmission	195/188[2)]	205	215	195	235
Manual transmission automated	200	–	–	–	–
Automatic transmission	–	–	210	–	235

2) Ecotec version

Engine	D16DTN	D16DTI	D16DTH	D16DTR
Maximum speed [km/h]				
Manual transmission	200	200	213	220
Manual transmission automated	–	–	–	–
Automatic transmission	–	–	208	–

Sports Tourer

Engine	D10XFL	D14XFL	B14XFT / D14XFT	D14XNT CNG	D16SHT
Maximum speed [km/h]					
Manual transmission	195/187[2)]	205	215	195	235
Manual transmission automated	–	–	–	–	–
Automatic transmission	–	–	210	–	235

2) Ecotec version

Engine	D16DTI	D16DTH	B16DTR
Maximum speed [km/h]			
Manual transmission	200	212	220
Manual transmission automated	–	–	–
Automatic transmission	–	207	–

Vehicle weight

Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

5-door Hatchback	Engine	Manual transmission	Manual transmission automated	Automatic transmission
without/with air conditioning [kg]	D10XFL	1263/1273	–	–
	D14XFL	1268/1278	–	–
	B14XFT / D14XFT	1268/1278	–	1298/1308
	D14XNT CNG	1364/1383	–	–
	D16SHT	1350/1369	–	1378/1397
	D16DTN	1364/1383	–	–
	D16DTI	1364/1384	–	–
	D16DTH	1378/1397	–	1393/1412
	D16DTR	1396/1412	–	–

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 89.

Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

Sports Tourer	Engine	Manual transmission	Manual transmission automated	Automatic transmission
without/with air conditioning [kg]	D10XFL	1278/1288	–	–
	D14XFL	1312/1322	–	–
	B14XFT / D14XFT	1312/1322	–	1340/1350
	D14XNT CNG	1425/1443	–	–
	D16SHT	1393/1411	–	1425/1443
	D16DTI	1410-1428	–	–
	D16DTH	1425/1443	–	1456/1474
	D16DTN	1410-1428	–	–
	D16DTR	1639/1459	–	–

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 89.

Vehicle dimensions

	5-door hatchback	Sports Tourer
Length [mm]	4370-4386	4702
Width without exterior mirrors [mm]	1809	1809
Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]	2042	2042
Height (without antenna) [mm]	1437-1531	1452-1580
Length of load compartment floor [mm]	828	1065
Length of load compartment with folded rear seats [mm]	1575	1872
Load compartment width [mm]	1001	1028
Load compartment height [mm]	600	747
Wheelbase [mm]	2662	2662
Turning circle diameter [m]	11.05-11.44	11.05-11.44

Capacities

Engine oil

Engine	D10XFL	D14XFL, B14XFT, D14XFT	D14XNT CNG	D16DTH, D16DTI, D16DTN, D16DTR	D16SHT
including filter [l]	4.0	4.0	4.0	5.0	5.5
between MIN and MAX [l]	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

Fuel tank

Petrol/diesel, refilling quantity [l]	48
Natural gas CNG, refilling quantity [kg] or [l][5)]	13.4
Petrol, refilling quantity [l]	14

5) Value refers to test gas G20 (99 to 100% methane) at 20 MPa/200 bar/2900 psi and 15 °C.

AdBlue tank

	5-door hatchback	Sports Tourer
AdBlue, refilling quantity [l]	12.5	13.5

Tyre pressures

Engine	Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
D10XFL	195/65 R15, 225/45 R17	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	205/55 R16	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
D14XFL	195/65 R15, 225/45 R17, 225/40 R18	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	205/55 R16	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)

Engine	Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B14XFT / D14XFT	195/65 R15, 225/45 R17, 215/55 R16, 215/50 R17, 225/40 R18	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	205/55 R16	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
D14XNT CNG	215/55 R16, 215/50 R17	240/2.4 (35)	240/2.4 (35)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	300/3.0 (43)
D16DTN	195/65 R15, 225/45 R17, 225/40 R18	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	205/55 R16	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)

Engine	Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
D16DTH	225/45 R17, 225/40 R18	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	205/55 R16	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
D16DTR, D16SHT	225/45 R17	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	225/40 R18	260/2.6 (38)	240/2.4 (35)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	290/2.9 (42)
	205/55 R16	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
D16DTI	195/65 R15, 225/45 R17	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
	205/55 R16	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)
All	Temporary spare wheel 115/70 R16	420/4.2 (60)	420/4.2 (60)	–	–	420/4.2 (60)	420/4.2 (60)

Customer information

Customer information **298**
Declaration of conformity 298
REACH 302
Software acknowledgement 302
Software update 304
Registered trademarks 305
Vehicle data recording and privacy **305**
Event data recorders 305
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 308

Customer information

Declaration of conformity

Radio transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and / or receive radio waves subject to Directive 2014/53/EU. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following internet address: www.opel.com/conformity.

Importer is
Opel / Vauxhall, Bahnhofsplatz, 65423 Ruesselsheim am Main, Germany.

Antenna
Laird

8100 Industrial Park Drive, Grand Blanc, MI, 48439, USA

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

Antenna
Kathrein Automotive North America, Inc.

3967 W. Hamlin Rd., Rochester Hills, MI 48309, USA

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

Electronic key
Denso Coperation

Waldeckerstraße 11, 64546 Mörfelden-Walldorf, Germany

Operation frequency: 433,92 MHz

Maximum output: -5,88 dBm

Electronic key module
Denso Coperation

Waldeckerstraße 11, 64546 Mörfelden-Walldorf, Germany

Operation frequency: 125 kHz

Maximum output: -0,14 dBm

Front radar unit
Continental Automotive GmbH

ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH, Peter-Dornier-Straße 10, 88131 Lindau, Germany

Operation frequency: 76-77 GHz

Maximum output: 30 EIRP dBm

Immobiliser

Bosch

Robert Bosch GmbH, Robert Bosch Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen, Germany

Operation frequency: 125 kHz

Maximum output:
5.1 dBµA/m @ 10 m

Infotainment system R 4.0

LGE

LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V., Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM Amstelveen, The Netherlands

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
2402.0 - 2480.0	4
2400.0 - 2483.5	13
5725.0 - 5850.0	13

Infotainment system R300 BT

Humax Automotive Co. Ltd.

2, Yeongmun-ro, Cheoin-gu, Yong-in-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea

Operation frequency:
2402 - 2480 MHz

Maximum output: 4 dBm

OnStar module

LGE

LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V., Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM Amstelveen, The Netherlands

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (dBm)
2402 - 2480	4
2412 - 2462	18
880 - 915	33
1710 - 1785	24
1850 - 1910	24
1920 - 1980	24
2500 - 2570	23

Infotainment system Navi 900 IntelliLink

Bosch

Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, Robert-Bosch-Straße 200, 31139 Hildesheim, Germany

Operation frequency (MHz)	Maximum output (mW)
2402 - 2480	10
2400 - 2480	100

Infotainment system Navi 900 Tuner

Delphi

Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal, Germany

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

Parking heater remote conrtol receiver

Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE

Friedrichshafener Straße 9, 82205 Gilching, Germany

Operation frequency: N/A

Maximum output: N/A

Parking heater remote conrtol transmitter
Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE

Friedrichshafener Straße 9, 82205 Gilching, Germany

Operation frequency: 869,0 MHz

Maximum output: 14 dBm

Radio remote control receiver
Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert Bosch Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: N/A

Radio remote control transmitter
Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert Bosch Platz 1, 70839 Gerlingen, Germany

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: -9 dbm

Tyre pressure sensors
Schrader Electronics Ltd.

11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland, United Kingdom

Operation frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum output: 10 dBm

Jack

Wir leben Autos.

Konformitätserklärung

nach EG Richtlinie 2006/42/EG

Hiermit erklären wir, dass das Produkt:

Produktbezeichnung: Wagenheber

Typ/GM-Teilenummern: 13512620

den Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG entspricht.

Angewendete technische Normen:

GMN9737	Jacking
GM 14337	Standard Equipment Jack - Hardware Tests
GMN5127	Vehicle Integrity-Hoisting and Service Station Jacking
GMW15005	Standard Equipment Jack and Spare Tire, Vehicle Test
ISO TS 16949	Qualitätsmanagementsystem

Der Unterzeichner ist Bevollmächtigter für die Zusammenstellung der technischen Unterlagen.

Rüsselsheim, 27. November 2015

André-Alexander Konter
Engineering Group Manager Tire and Wheel Systems
Adam Opel AG

Adam Opel AG
Bahnhofsplatz
65423 Rüsselsheim
T (0 61 42) 7-70, F (0 61 42) 7-7 88 00
www.opel.de

Vorstand:
Dr. Karl-Thomas Neumann (Vorsitzender),
Michael F. Ableson, Holger Kimmes,
Michael Lohscheller, Dr. Thomas Sedran,
Peter Thom, Susanna Webber, Johan Willems

Aufsichtsrat:
Stephen J. Girsky (Vorsitzender)

Sitz der Gesellschaft: Rüsselsheim
Handelsregister:
Amtsgericht Darmstadt, HRB 89558

Ein Unternehmen der GM Gruppe

Translation of the original declaration of conformity

Declaration of conformity according to EC Directive 2006/42/EC

We declare that the product:

Product designation: Jack

Type/GM part number: 13512620

is in compliance with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC.

Applied technical standards:

GMN9737	:	jacking
GM 14337	:	standard equipment jack – hardware tests
GMN5127	:	vehicle integrity – hoisting and service station jacking
GMW15005	:	standard equipment jack and spare tyre, vehicle test
ISO TS 16949	:	quality management systems

The signatory is authorised to compile the technical documentation.

Rüsselsheim, 27th November 2015

signed by

André-Alexander Konter

Engineering Group Manager Tyre and Wheel Systems

Adam Opel AG

D-65423 Rüsselsheim

CRAN type approval numbers

List of all Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia (CRAN) type approval numbers:

TA-2017/3397, TA-2017/3398, TA-2017/3399, TA-2017/3443

REACH

Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH) is a European Union regulation adopted to improve the protection of human health and the environment from the risks that can be posed by chemicals. Visit www.opel.com/reach for further information and for access to the Article 33 communication.

Software acknowledgement

Certain OnStar components include libcurl and unzip software and other third party software. Below are the notices and licenses associated with libcurl and unzip and for other third party software please see http://www.lg.com/global/support/opensource/index.

libcurl

Copyright and permission notice

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2010, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

The software is provided "as is", without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including but not limited to the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and noninfringement of third party rights. In no event shall the authors or copyright holders be liable for any claim, damages or other liability, whether in an action of contract, tort or otherwise, arising from, out of or in connection with the software or the use or other dealings in the software.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

unzip

This is version 2005-Feb-10 of the Info-ZIP copyright and license. The definitive version of this document should be available at ftp://ftp.info-zip.org/pub/infozip/license.html indefinitely.

Copyright (c) 1990-2005 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, “Info-ZIP” is defined as the following set of individuals:

Mark Adler, John Bush, Karl Davis, Harald Denker, Jean-Michel Dubois, Jean-loup Gailly, Hunter Goatley, Ed Gordon, Ian Gorman, Chris Herborth, Dirk Haase, Greg Hartwig, Robert Heath, Jonathan Hudson, Paul Kienitz, David Kirschbaum, Johnny Lee, Onno van der Linden, Igor Mandrichenko, Steve P. Miller, Sergio Monesi, Keith Owens, George Petrov, Greg Roelofs, Kai Uwe Rommel, Steve Salisbury, Dave Smith, Steven M. Schweda, Christian Spieler, Cosmin Truta, Antoine Verheijen, Paul von Behren, Rich Wales, Mike White.

This software is provided “as is,” without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.
2. Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a self-extracting archive; that is

permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.

3. Altered versions--including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions--must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source. Such altered versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases--including, but not limited to, labeling of the altered versions with the names “Info-ZIP” (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalizations), “Pocket UnZip,” “WiZ” or “MacZip” without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from misrepresentative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or of the Info-ZIP URL(s).
4. Info-ZIP retains the right to use the names “Info-ZIP,” “Zip,” “UnZip,” “UnZipSFX,” “WiZ,” “Pocket UnZip,” “Pocket Zip,” and “MacZip” for its own source and binary releases.

Software update

The Infotainment system can download and install selected software updates over a wireless connection.

Note
The availability of these over-the-air vehicle software updates varies by vehicle and country. Find more information on our home page.

Internet connection

Downloading over-the-air vehicle software updates requires internet connectivity, which can be accessed through the vehicle’s built-in OnStar connection or another password-protected Wi-Fi hotspot, e.g. provided by a mobile phone.

To connect the Infotainment system to a hotspot, select **Settings** on the home screen, **Wi-Fi** and then **Manage Wi-Fi Networks**. Select the desired Wi-Fi network, and follow the on-screen prompts.

Updates

The system will prompt for certain updates to be downloaded and installed. There is also an option to check for updates manually.

To manually check for updates, select **Settings** on the home screen, **Software Information** and then **System Update**. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Note
Steps for downloading and installing updates may vary by vehicle.

Note
During the installation process, the vehicle may not be operational.

Registered trademarks

Apple Inc.
Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.

App Store® and iTunes Store® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod touch®, iPod nano®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

DivX, LLC
DivX® and DivX Certified® are registered trademarks of DivX, LLC.

EnGIS Technologies, Inc.
BringGo® is a registered trademark of EnGIS Technologies, Inc.

Google Inc.
Android™ and Google Play™ Store are trademarks of Google Inc.

Stitcher Inc.
Stitcher™ is a trademark of Stitcher, Inc.

Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V.
AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA.

Vehicle data recording and privacy

Event data recorders

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Control units process data which is received by vehicle sensors, for example, or which they generate themselves or exchange amongst themselves. Some control units are necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle, others assist you while you drive (driver assistance systems), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about data processing in the vehicle. You will find additional information as to which specific data is uploaded, stored and passed on to third parties and for what purpose in your vehicle under the key word Data Protection closely linked to the references for the affected functional characteristics in the relevant owner's manual or in the general terms of sale. These are also available online.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data for operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, e.g.:

- vehicle status information (e.g. wheel rotation rate, speed, movement delay, lateral acceleration, "seatbelts fastened" display),
- ambient conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a rule such data is transient, not stored for longer than an operational cycle, and only processed on board the vehicle itself. Control units often include data storage (including the vehicle key). This is used to allow information to be documented temporarily or permanently on vehicle condition, component stress, maintenance requirements and technical events and errors.

Depending on the technical equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- system component operating states (e.g. fill level, tyre pressure, battery status)
- faults and defects in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- system reactions in special driving situations (e.g. triggering of an airbag, actuation of the stability control systems)
- information on events damaging the vehicle
- for electric vehicles the amount of charge in the high-voltage battery, estimated range

In special cases (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise just be volatile.

When you use services (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the operating data saved can be read together with the vehicle identification number and used when necessary. Staff working for the service net-work (e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. breakdown services) can read the data from the vehicle. The same applies to warranty work and quality assurance measures.

Data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port prescribed by law in the vehicle. The operating data which is read out, documents the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components and assists with fault diagnosis, compliance with warranty obligations and quality improvement. This data, in particular information on component stress, technical events, operator errors and other faults, is transmitted to the manufacturer where appropriate, together with the vehicle identification number. The manufacturer is also subject to product liability. The manufacturer potentially also uses operating data from vehicles for product recalls. This data can also be used to check customer warranty and guarantee claims.

Fault memories in the vehicle can be reset by a service company when carrying out servicing or repairs.

Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and custom settings can be stored in the vehicle and changed at any time.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- seat and steering wheel position settings
- chassis and air conditioning settings
- custom settings such as interior lighting

You can input your own data in the infotainment functions for your vehicle as part of the selected features.

Depending on the equipment level in question, these include

- multimedia data such as music, videos or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system
- address book data for use with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system
- input destinations
- data on the use of online services

This data for comfort and infotainment functions can be stored locally in the vehicle or be kept on a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player). Data that you have input yourself can be deleted at any time.

This data can only be transmitted out of the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in accordance with the settings selected by you.

Smartphone integration, e.g. Android Auto or Apple CarPlay

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle so that you can control it via the controls integrated in the vehicle. The smartphone image and sound can be output via the multimedia system in this case. At the same time, specific information is transmitted to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as position data, day / night mode and other general vehicle information. For more information, please see the operating instructions for the vehicle / infotainment system.

Integration allows selected smartphone apps to be used, such as navigation or music playback. No further integration is possible between smartphone and vehicle, in particular active access to vehicle data. The nature of further data processing is determined by the provider of the app used. Whether you can define settings, and if so which ones, is dependent on the app in question and your smartphone's operating system.

Online services

If your vehicle has a radio network connection, this allows data to be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. The radio network connection is made possible by means of a transmitter device in your vehicle or a mobile device provided by you (e.g. a smartphone). Online functions can be used via this radio network connection. These include online services and applications / apps provided to you by the manufacturer or other providers.

Proprietary services

In the case of the manufacturer's online services, the relevant functions are described by the manufacturer in an appropriate location (e.g. Owner's Manual, the manufacturer's website) and the associated data protection information is provided. Personal data may be used to provide online services. Data exchange for this purpose takes place via a protected connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for the purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data for the purposes of preparation of services take place solely on the basis of legal permission, e.g. in the case of the eCall emergency communication system or a contractual agreement, or by virtue of consent.

You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (which are subject to charges to some extent) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire radio network connection. This does not include statutory functions and services such as an emergency communication system.

Third party services

If you make use of online services from other providers (third parties), these services are subject to the liability and data protection and usage conditions of the provider in question. The manufacturer frequently has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Therefore, please note the nature, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data within the scope of third party services provided by the service provider in question.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and immobiliser. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking / unlocking and starting. RFID technology in Opel vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Opel system containing personal information.

Index

A

Accessories and vehicle modifications 229
Active emergency braking..... 198
Adaptive cruise control..... 114, 187
AdBlue..... 112, 169
Adjustable air vents 154
Airbag and belt tensioners 109
Airbag deactivation 64, 109
Airbag label..... 59
Airbag system 59
Air conditioning regular operation 155
Air conditioning system 147
Air intake 155
Air vents..... 154
Antilock brake system 178
Antilock brake system (ABS) 111
Anti-theft alarm system 37
Anti-theft locking system 37
Appearance care..... 275
Armrest..... 54, 56
Armrest storage 73
Ashtrays 99
Automatic anti-dazzle 42
Automatic light control 136
Automatic locking 30
Automatic transmission 171
Autostop..... 162
Auxiliary heater..... 154

B

Battery discharge protection 145
Battery voltage 124
Belts..... 57
BlueInjection..... 169
Bonnet 231
Brake and clutch fluid..... 279
Brake and clutch system 110
Brake assist 181
Brake fluid 234
Brakes 178, 234
Breakdown..... 273
Bulb replacement 237

C

Capacities 294
Cargo management system 83
Catalytic converter 168
Central locking system 25
Centre console lighting 144
Changing tyre and wheel size ... 262
Charging system 110
Child locks 31
Child restraint installation locations 68
Child restraints..... 66
Child restraint systems 66
Climate control 16
Climate control systems..... 146
Clock..... 96

CNG..... 105, 221
Control indicators..... 108
Control of the vehicle 157
Controls..... 92
Convex shape 40
Coolant and antifreeze..... 279
Cruise control 114, 184
Cupholders 72
Curtain airbag system 64
Curve lighting..... 137

D

Danger, Warnings and Cautions . . . 4
Daytime running lights 137
Declaration of conformity..... 298
DEF..... 169
Diesel exhaust fluid..... 169
Diesel fuel system bleeding 236
Door open 115
Doors..... 31
Driver assistance systems..... 184
Driver Information Centre..... 115
Driving characteristics and towing tips 224
Driving hints..... 157

E

Electric adjustment 40
Electrical system..... 247
Electric parking brake..... 110, 179
Electric parking brake fault..... 110
Electronic climate control system 149
Electronic driving programmes 173, 177
Electronic key system..... 23
Electronic Stability Control..... 182
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system..... 111
Electronic Stability Control off..... 111
End-of-life vehicle recovery 230
Engine compartment fuse box ... 248
Engine coolant 233
Engine coolant temperature gauge 106
Engine data 287
Engine exhaust 167
Engine identification..... 283
Engine oil 232, 279, 284
Engine oil pressure 112
Entry lighting 144
Event data recorders..... 305
Exhaust filter..... 112, 167
Exit lighting 144
Exterior care 275
Exterior light 113
Exterior lighting 13, 135
Exterior mirrors..... 40

F

Fault 173, 177
First aid kit 88
Fixed air vents 154
Folding mirrors 40
Following distance..... 111
Following distance indication..... 197
Forward collision alert..... 195
Front airbag system 63
Front fog lights 114, 141, 239
Front seats..... 48
Front storage..... 73
Fuel..... 219
Fuel for diesel engines 220
Fuel for natural gas operation . . . 221
Fuel for petrol engines 219
Fuel gauge 105
Fuel selector 105
Fuses 247

G

Gauges..... 103
Gear shifting..... 111
General information 224
Glovebox 72

H

Halogen headlights 237
Hand brake..... 178, 179
Hazard warning flashers 140
Headlight flash 136
Headlight range adjustment 136
Headlights..... 135
Headlights when driving abroad 137

Head restraint adjustment 8
Head restraints 47
Heated mirrors 41
Heated rear window 44
Heated steering wheel 93
Heating 55, 57
Heating and ventilation system . 146
High beam 113, 136
High beam assist..... 113
Hill start assist 181
Horn 14, 93

I
Identification plate 282
Ignition switch positions 157
Immobiliser 39, 113
Indicators..... 103
Info Display..... 121
Information displays..... 115
Instrument cluster 100
Instrument panel fuse box 250
Instrument panel illumination 247
Instrument panel illumination control 143
Instrument panel overview 10
Interior care 276
Interior lighting..... 143
Interior lights 143, 247
Interior mirrors..... 41
Interruption of power supply 174
Introduction 3

J
Jump starting 271

K
Key, memorised settings..... 25
Keys 21
Keys, locks..... 21

L
Lane keep assist..... 111, 216
Lashing eyes 82
LED headlights..... 113, 137
Lighting features..... 144
Light switch 135
Load compartment 31, 74
Load compartment cover 80
Load compartment fuse box 252
Loading information 89
Low fuel 113

M
Malfunction indicator light 110
Manual anti-dazzle 41
Manual mode 173, 177
Manual seat adjustment..... 49
Manual transmission 174
Manual transmission automated 175
Manual windows 42
Massage..... 56
Maximum speed..... 256
Memorised settings..... 25
Midlevel display..... 115
Mirror adjustment 9
Misted light covers 142

N
Natural gas..... 105, 221
New vehicle running-in 157
Number plate light 246

O
Object detection systems..... 201
Odometer 104
Oil, engine..... 279, 284
OnStar..... 131
Outside temperature 96
Overrun cut-off 162

P
Parking 19, 165
Parking assist 201
Parking brake 179
Parking lights 142
Particulate filter..... 167
Performance 289
Performing work 231
Pollen filter 155
Power button..... 158
Power outlets 98

Power seat adjustment 51
Power windows 42
Preheating 112
Puncture..... 266

Q
Quickheat..... 154

R
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)..... 308
Radio remote control 22
REACH..... 302
Reading lights 143
Rear floor storage cover 82
Rear fog light 114, 142, 240
Rear seats..... 56
Rear storage..... 80
Rear view camera 210
Rear window wiper and washer . . 95
Recommended fluids and lubricants 279, 284
Refuelling 221
Registered trademarks..... 305
Retained power off..... 160
Reversing lights 142
Ride control systems..... 181
Roof..... 45
Roof load..... 89
Roof rack 89

S
Safety belts..... 57
Safety net 85
Seat adjustment 7
Seat belt 8
Seat belt reminder 108
Seat belts 57
Seat heating
Seat heating, front..... 55
Seat heating, rear..... 57
Seat position 48
Selective catalytic reduction..... 169
Selector lever 172, 176
Service 155, 278
Service display 107
Service information 278
Side airbag system 63
Side blind spot alert..... 209
Sidelights..... 135
Side turn lights 246
Software acknowledgement..... 302
Software update..... 304
Spare wheel 266
Speed limiter..... 114, 186
Speedometer 103
Sport mode 183
Starting and operating..... 157
Starting off 17
Starting the engine 160
Steering..... 157
Steering wheel adjustment 9, 92
Steering wheel controls 92
Stop-start system..... 162
Storage..... 72
Storage compartments..... 72
Sunroof 45
Sunvisor lights 144
Sun visors 44
Symbols 4

T
Tachometer 105
Tail lights 240
Three-point seat belt 58
Tools 254
Tow bar..... 224
Towing..... 224, 273
Towing another vehicle 274
Towing equipment 225
Towing the vehicle 273
Traction Control system 181
Traction Control system off..... 112
Traffic sign assistant..... 114, 212
Trailer coupling..... 224
Trailer stability assist 228
Trailer towing 224
Transmission 16
Transmission display 171, 175
Tread depth 261
Trip odometer 104

Turn lights 108, 141
Tyre chains 262
Tyre designations 256
Tyre pressure 256
Tyre pressure monitoring system..... 112, 257
Tyre pressures 295
Tyre repair kit 262

U

Ultrasonic parking assist..... 201
Upholstery..... 276
Uplevel display..... 115
USB port..... 98
Using this manual 3

V

Valet mode..... 121
Vehicle battery 235
Vehicle checks..... 231
Vehicle data..... 284
Vehicle data recording and privacy..... 305
Vehicle detected ahead..... 114
Vehicle dimensions 293
Vehicle Identification Number 282
Vehicle jack..... 254
Vehicle messages 123
Vehicle personalisation 125
Vehicle security..... 37
Vehicle specific data 3
Vehicle storage..... 230
Vehicle tools..... 254
Vehicle unlocking 6
Vehicle weight 291
Ventilating..... 55
Ventilation..... 146

W

Warning chimes 124
Warning lights..... 103
Warning triangle 87
Washer and wiper systems 14
Washer fluid 234
Wheel changing 266
Wheel covers 262
Wheels and tyres 255
Windows..... 42
Windscreen..... 42
Windscreen wiper and washer 93
Winter tyres 255
Wiper blade replacement 236

www.opel.com

Copyright by Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim, Germany.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. Opel Automobile GmbH reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information in this publication as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: August 2018, Opel Automobile GmbH, Rüsselsheim.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

ID-OASKOBSE1808-en